# **PSyclone Documentation**

Release 1.7.0

Rupert Ford, Joerg Henrichs, Iva Kavcic, Andrew Porter and Sergi Siso

# **CONTENTS**

1.2.1 Dependencies       2         1.2.1 System-specific set-up       4         1.2.2 fparser       4         1.2.3 pyparsing       4         1.2.4 graphviz       5         1.2.5 termcolor       5         1.2.6 py.test       5         1.3 Environment       6         1.5 Test       7         1.6 Run       7         2 Examples       11         2.1.1 Example 1: Loop transformations       11         2.1.2 Example 2: OpenACC       11         2.1.3 Example 3: OpenCL       11         2.1.4 Example 4: Kernels containing use statements       11         2.2.2 Dynamo       11         2.2.1 Example 3: OpenCL       12         2.2.2 Example 4       12         2.2.2 Example 5       12         2.2.4 Example 6       12         2.2.5 Example 6       12         2.2.6 Example 7       12         2.2.8 Example 8       12         2.2.9 Example 10       12         2.2.11 Example 11       13         2.2.12 Example 12       13         2.3.1 Example 1: OpenMP parallelisation of tra_adv       13         2.3.2 Example 2: OpenMP parallelisation of tra_adv       13     <	1	Getti	etting Going			
1.2.1   System-specific set-up		1.1	Downlo	ad	3	
1.2.2   fparser		1.2	Depend	encies	3	
1.2.3 pyparsing			1.2.1	System-specific set-up	4	
1.2.4 graphviz   5			1.2.2	fparser	4	
1.2.4 graphviz   5			1.2.3		4	
1.2.5 termcolor   1.2.6 py.test   5			1.2.4		5	
1.2.6 py.test       5         1.3 Environment       6         1.4 Configuration       6         1.5 Test       7         1.6 Run       7         2 Examples       11         2.1.1 Example 1: Loop transformations       11         2.1.2 Example 2: OpenACC       11         2.1.3 Example 3: OpenCL       11         2.1.4 Example 4: Kernels containing use statements       11         2.2 Dynamo       11         2.2.1 Example 1       12         2.2.2 Example 2       12         2.2.3 Example 3       12         2.2.4 Example 4       12         2.2.5 Example 5       12         2.2.6 Example 6       12         2.2.7 Example 7       12         2.2.8 Example 8       12         2.2.9 Example 9       12         2.2.10 Example 10       13         2.2.11 Example 11       12         2.2.12 Example 12       13         2.3.1 Example 1: OpenMP parallelisation of tra_adv       15         2.3.2 Example 2: OpenMP parallelisation of tra_adv       15         3 PSyclone Script       15			1.2.5	termcolor	5	
1.3       Environment       6         1.4       Configuration       6         1.5       Test       7         1.6       Run       7         2       Examples       11         2.1       GOcean       11         2.1.1       Example 1: Loop transformations       11         2.1.2       Example 2: OpenACC       11         2.1.3       Example 3: OpenCL       11         2.1.4       Example 4: Kernels containing use statements       11         2.2       Dynamo       11         2.2.1       Example 1       12         2.2.2       Example 2       12         2.2.3       Example 3       12         2.2.4       Example 4       12         2.2.5       Example 3       12         2.2.4       Example 4       12         2.2.5       Example 6       12         2.2.7       Example 8       12         2.2.9       Example 9       12         2.2.10       Example 10       13         2.2.11       Example 10       13         2.2.12       Example 1: OpenMP parallelisation of tra_adv       13         2.3.1       Exa			1.2.6		5	
1.4 Configuration       6         1.5 Test       7         1.6 Run       7         2 Examples       11         2.1.1 GOcean       11         2.1.2 Example 1: Loop transformations       11         2.1.2 Example 2: OpenACC       11         2.1.3 Example 3: OpenCL       11         2.1.4 Example 4: Kernels containing use statements       11         2.2 Dynamo       11         2.2.1 Example 1       12         2.2.2 Example 2       12         2.2.3 Example 3       12         2.2.4 Example 4       12         2.2.5 Example 5       12         2.2.6 Example 6       12         2.2.7 Example 7       12         2.2.8 Example 8       12         2.2.9 Example 9       12         2.2.10 Example 10       13         2.2.11 Example 11       13         2.2.12 Example 12       13         2.3.1 Example 1: OpenMP parallelisation of tra_adv       13         2.3.2 Example 2: OpenMP parallelisation of tra_adv       13         2.3.3 Example 3: OpenACC parallelisation of tra_adv       13         2.3.4 Example 3: OpenACC parallelisation of tra_adv       13         2.3.5 Example 3: OpenACC parallelisation of tra_adv <th></th> <th>1.3</th> <th>Environ</th> <th></th> <th>6</th>		1.3	Environ		6	
1.5       Test       1.6       Run       7         2       Examples       11       2.1       GOcean       11         2.1.1       Example 1: Loop transformations       11       2.1.2       Example 2: OpenACC       11         2.1.3       Example 3: OpenCL       11       11       2.1.4       Example 3: OpenCL       11         2.1.4       Example 4: Kernels containing use statements       11       12       2.2       Dynamo       11         2.2.1       Example 4: Kernels containing use statements       11       12       2.2       Example 3: 12       12         2.2.1       Example 1: Example 2: 12       12       2.2       12		1.4				
1.6 Run       7         2 Examples       11         2.1 GOcean       11         2.1.1 Example 1: Loop transformations       11         2.1.2 Example 2: OpenACC       11         2.1.3 Example 3: OpenCL       11         2.1.4 Example 4: Kernels containing use statements       11         2.2 Dynamo       11         2.2.1 Example 1       12         2.2.2 Example 2       12         2.2.3 Example 3       12         2.2.4 Example 4       12         2.2.5 Example 5       12         2.2.6 Example 6       12         2.2.7 Example 7       12         2.2.8 Example 8       12         2.2.9 Example 9       12         2.2.10 Example 10       13         2.2.2.11 Example 11       13         2.2.2.12 Example 12       13         2.3.1 Example 1: OpenMP parallelisation of tra_adv       13         2.3.2 Example 2: OpenMP parallelisation of tra_adv       13         2.3.3 Example 3: OpenACC parallelisation of tra_adv       13         3 PSyclone Script       15			_		7	
2 Examples       11         2.1 GOcean       11         2.1.1 Example 1: Loop transformations       11         2.1.2 Example 2: OpenACC       11         2.1.3 Example 3: OpenCL       11         2.1.4 Example 4: Kernels containing use statements       11         2.2 Dynamo       11         2.2.1 Example 1       12         2.2.2 Example 3       12         2.2.3 Example 3       12         2.2.4 Example 4       12         2.2.5 Example 5       12         2.2.6 Example 6       12         2.2.7 Example 7       12         2.2.8 Example 8       12         2.2.9 Example 9       12         2.2.10 Example 10       13         2.2.11 Example 11       13         2.2.12 Example 12       13         2.3.1 Example 1: OpenMP parallelisation of tra_adv       13         2.3.2 Example 2: OpenMP parallelisation of tra_fined       13         2.3.3 Example 3: OpenACC parallelisation of tra_adv       13         3 PSyclone Script       15					7	
2.1 GOcean       11         2.1.1 Example 1: Loop transformations       11         2.1.2 Example 2: OpenACC       11         2.1.3 Example 3: OpenCL       11         2.1.4 Example 4: Kernels containing use statements       11         2.2 Dynamo       11         2.2.1 Example 1       12         2.2.2 Example 2       12         2.2.3 Example 3       12         2.2.4 Example 4       12         2.2.5 Example 5       12         2.2.6 Example 6       12         2.2.7 Example 7       12         2.2.8 Example 8       12         2.2.9 Example 9       12         2.2.10 Example 10       13         2.2.11 Example 11       13         2.2.12 Example 2: OpenMP parallelisation of tra_adv       13         2.3.1 Example 1: OpenMP parallelisation of tra_adv       13         2.3.2 Example 2: OpenMP parallelisation of tra_adv       13         2.3.3 Example 3: OpenACC parallelisation of tra_adv       13         3 PSyclone Script       15		1.0				
2.1.1 Example 1: Loop transformations       11         2.1.2 Example 2: OpenACC       11         2.1.3 Example 3: OpenCL       11         2.1.4 Example 4: Kernels containing use statements       11         2.2 Dynamo       11         2.2.1 Example 1       12         2.2.2 Example 2       12         2.2.3 Example 3       12         2.2.4 Example 4       12         2.2.5 Example 5       12         2.2.6 Example 6       12         2.2.7 Example 7       12         2.2.8 Example 8       12         2.2.9 Example 9       12         2.2.10 Example 10       13         2.2.11 Example 11       13         2.2.12 Example 12       13         2.3.1 Example 1: OpenMP parallelisation of tra_adv       15         2.3.2 Example 2: OpenMP parallelisation of tra_adv       13         2.3.3 Example 3: OpenACC parallelisation of tra_adv       13         3 PSyclone Script       15	2	Exan	nples		11	
2.1.2       Example 2: OpenACC       11         2.1.3       Example 3: OpenCL       11         2.1.4       Example 4: Kernels containing use statements       11         2.2       Dynamo       11         2.2.1       Example 1       12         2.2.2       Example 2       12         2.2.3       Example 3       12         2.2.4       Example 3       12         2.2.4       Example 4       12         2.2.5       Example 5       12         2.2.6       Example 6       12         2.2.7       Example 7       12         2.2.8       Example 8       12         2.2.9       Example 9       12         2.2.10       Example 10       13         2.2.11       Example 11       13         2.2.12       Example 12       13         2.3.1       Example 1: OpenMP parallelisation of tra_adv       13         2.3.2       Example 2: OpenMP parallelisation of tra_adv       13         2.3.3       Example 3: OpenACC parallelisation of tra_adv       13         3       PSyclone Script       15		2.1	GOcean	1	11	
2.1.3       Example 3: OpenCL       11         2.1.4       Example 4: Kernels containing use statements       11         2.2       Dynamo       11         2.2.1       Example 1       12         2.2.2       Example 2       12         2.2.3       Example 3       12         2.2.4       Example 3       12         2.2.5       Example 5       12         2.2.6       Example 5       12         2.2.7       Example 6       12         2.2.7       Example 7       12         2.2.8       Example 8       12         2.2.9       Example 9       12         2.2.10       Example 10       13         2.2.11       Example 11       13         2.2.12       Example 12       13         2.3.1       Example 1: OpenMP parallelisation of tra_adv       13         2.3.2       Example 2: OpenMP parallelisation of tra_adv       13         3       PSyclone Script       15			2.1.1	Example 1: Loop transformations	11	
2.1.3       Example 3: OpenCL       11         2.1.4       Example 4: Kernels containing use statements       11         2.2       Dynamo       11         2.2.1       Example 1       12         2.2.2       Example 2       12         2.2.3       Example 3       12         2.2.4       Example 3       12         2.2.5       Example 5       12         2.2.6       Example 5       12         2.2.7       Example 6       12         2.2.7       Example 7       12         2.2.8       Example 8       12         2.2.9       Example 9       12         2.2.10       Example 10       13         2.2.11       Example 11       13         2.2.12       Example 12       13         2.3.1       Example 1: OpenMP parallelisation of tra_adv       13         2.3.2       Example 2: OpenMP parallelisation of tra_adv       13         3       PSyclone Script       15			2.1.2	Example 2: OpenACC	11	
2.1.4 Example 4: Kernels containing use statements       11         2.2. Dynamo       11         2.2.1 Example 1       12         2.2.2 Example 2       12         2.2.3 Example 3       12         2.2.4 Example 4       12         2.2.5 Example 5       12         2.2.6 Example 6       12         2.2.7 Example 7       12         2.2.8 Example 8       12         2.2.9 Example 9       12         2.2.10 Example 10       13         2.2.11 Example 11       13         2.2.12 Example 12       13         2.3.1 Example 1: OpenMP parallelisation of tra_adv       13         2.3.2 Example 2: OpenMP parallelisation of tra_adv       13         2.3.3 Example 3: OpenACC parallelisation of tra_adv       13         3 PSyclone Script       15			2.1.3		11	
2.2.1       Example 1       12         2.2.2       Example 2       12         2.2.3       Example 3       12         2.2.4       Example 4       12         2.2.5       Example 5       12         2.2.6       Example 6       12         2.2.7       Example 7       12         2.2.8       Example 8       12         2.2.9       Example 9       12         2.2.10       Example 10       13         2.2.11       Example 11       13         2.2.12       Example 12       13         2.3.1       Example 1: OpenMP parallelisation of tra_adv       13         2.3.2       Example 2: OpenMP parallelisation of tra_adv       13         2.3.3       Example 3: OpenACC parallelisation of tra_adv       13         3       PSyclone Script       15			2.1.4		11	
2.2.1       Example 1       12         2.2.2       Example 2       12         2.2.3       Example 3       12         2.2.4       Example 4       12         2.2.5       Example 5       12         2.2.6       Example 6       12         2.2.7       Example 7       12         2.2.8       Example 8       12         2.2.9       Example 9       12         2.2.10       Example 10       13         2.2.11       Example 11       13         2.2.12       Example 12       13         2.3.1       Example 1: OpenMP parallelisation of tra_adv       13         2.3.2       Example 2: OpenMP parallelisation of tra_adv       13         2.3.3       Example 3: OpenACC parallelisation of tra_adv       13         3       PSyclone Script       15		2.2	Dynamo	)	11	
2.2.3       Example 3       12         2.2.4       Example 4       12         2.2.5       Example 5       12         2.2.6       Example 6       12         2.2.7       Example 7       12         2.2.8       Example 8       12         2.2.9       Example 9       12         2.2.10       Example 10       13         2.2.11       Example 11       13         2.2.12       Example 12       13         2.3       NEMO       13         2.3.1       Example 1: OpenMP parallelisation of tra_adv       13         2.3.2       Example 2: OpenMP parallelisation of tra_adv       13         2.3.3       Example 3: OpenACC parallelisation of tra_adv       13         3       PSyclone Script       15					12	
2.2.3       Example 3       12         2.2.4       Example 4       12         2.2.5       Example 5       12         2.2.6       Example 6       12         2.2.7       Example 7       12         2.2.8       Example 8       12         2.2.9       Example 9       12         2.2.10       Example 10       13         2.2.11       Example 11       13         2.2.12       Example 12       13         2.3       NEMO       13         2.3.1       Example 1: OpenMP parallelisation of tra_adv       13         2.3.2       Example 2: OpenMP parallelisation of tra_adv       13         2.3.3       Example 3: OpenACC parallelisation of tra_adv       13         3       PSyclone Script       15			2.2.2	Example 2	12	
2.2.4       Example 4       12         2.2.5       Example 5       12         2.2.6       Example 6       12         2.2.7       Example 7       12         2.2.8       Example 8       12         2.2.9       Example 9       12         2.2.10       Example 10       13         2.2.11       Example 11       13         2.2.12       Example 12       13         2.3       NEMO       13         2.3.1       Example 1: OpenMP parallelisation of tra_adv       13         2.3.2       Example 2: OpenMP parallelisation of tra_adv       13         2.3.3       Example 3: OpenACC parallelisation of tra_adv       13         3       PSyclone Script       15			2.2.3	•	12	
2.2.5       Example 5       12         2.2.6       Example 6       12         2.2.7       Example 7       12         2.2.8       Example 8       12         2.2.9       Example 9       12         2.2.10       Example 10       13         2.2.11       Example 11       13         2.2.12       Example 12       13         2.3       NEMO       13         2.3.1       Example 1: OpenMP parallelisation of tra_adv       13         2.3.2       Example 2: OpenMP parallelisation of traldf_iso       13         2.3.3       Example 3: OpenACC parallelisation of tra_adv       13			2.2.4	•	12	
2.2.6       Example 6       12         2.2.7       Example 7       12         2.2.8       Example 8       12         2.2.9       Example 9       12         2.2.10       Example 10       13         2.2.11       Example 11       13         2.2.12       Example 12       13         2.3       NEMO       13         2.3.1       Example 1: OpenMP parallelisation of tra_adv       13         2.3.2       Example 2: OpenMP parallelisation of traldf_iso       13         2.3.3       Example 3: OpenACC parallelisation of tra_adv       13         3       PSyclone Script       15			2.2.5		12	
2.2.7       Example 7       12         2.2.8       Example 8       12         2.2.9       Example 9       12         2.2.10       Example 10       13         2.2.11       Example 11       13         2.2.12       Example 12       13         2.3       NEMO       13         2.3.1       Example 1: OpenMP parallelisation of tra_adv       13         2.3.2       Example 2: OpenMP parallelisation of traldf_iso       13         2.3.3       Example 3: OpenACC parallelisation of tra_adv       13			2.2.6		12	
2.2.8       Example 8       12         2.2.9       Example 9       12         2.2.10       Example 10       13         2.2.11       Example 11       13         2.2.12       Example 12       13         2.3       NEMO       13         2.3.1       Example 1: OpenMP parallelisation of tra_adv       13         2.3.2       Example 2: OpenMP parallelisation of traldf_iso       13         2.3.3       Example 3: OpenACC parallelisation of tra_adv       13     PSyclone Script			2.2.7		12	
2.2.9       Example 9       12         2.2.10       Example 10       13         2.2.11       Example 11       13         2.2.12       Example 12       13         2.3       NEMO       13         2.3.1       Example 1: OpenMP parallelisation of tra_adv       13         2.3.2       Example 2: OpenMP parallelisation of traldf_iso       13         2.3.3       Example 3: OpenACC parallelisation of tra_adv       13         3 PSyclone Script			2.2.8	1	12	
2.2.10       Example 10       13         2.2.11       Example 11       13         2.2.12       Example 12       13         2.3       NEMO       13         2.3.1       Example 1: OpenMP parallelisation of tra_adv       13         2.3.2       Example 2: OpenMP parallelisation of traldf_iso       13         2.3.3       Example 3: OpenACC parallelisation of tra_adv       13         3 PSyclone Script				*	12	
2.2.11 Example 11       13         2.2.12 Example 12       13         2.3 NEMO       13         2.3.1 Example 1: OpenMP parallelisation of tra_adv       13         2.3.2 Example 2: OpenMP parallelisation of traldf_iso       13         2.3.3 Example 3: OpenACC parallelisation of tra_adv       13         3 PSyclone Script       15			2.2.10	1	13	
2.2.12       Example 12       13         2.3       NEMO       13         2.3.1       Example 1: OpenMP parallelisation of tra_adv       13         2.3.2       Example 2: OpenMP parallelisation of traldf_iso       13         2.3.3       Example 3: OpenACC parallelisation of tra_adv       13         3       PSyclone Script       15				*		
2.3       NEMO        13         2.3.1       Example 1: OpenMP parallelisation of tra_adv       13         2.3.2       Example 2: OpenMP parallelisation of traldf_iso       13         2.3.3       Example 3: OpenACC parallelisation of tra_adv       13         3 PSyclone Script				<u>.</u>	13	
2.3.1 Example 1: OpenMP parallelisation of tra_adv		2.3		•		
2.3.2 Example 2: OpenMP parallelisation of traldf_iso		2.0				
2.3.3 Example 3: OpenACC parallelisation of tra_adv				<u> </u>		
3 PSyclone Script				1 1 1 =		
			2.3.3	Example 3. Open tee paramentation of tra_uar	13	
	3	PSycl	Syclone Script 1			
		3.1	Running	g	15	

		Basic Use	
	3.4	File output	
		Algorithm files with no invokes	
		Kernel search directory	
		Transformation script	
		Fortran line length	
		Distributed memory	
		Automatic Profiling Instrumentation	
		Fortran INCLUDE Files	
	3.12	Totali include incomments in the second incomm	
4	Kerne	l layer	1
	4.1	API	
	4.2	Metadata	2
_	A.1	When I	
5		ithm layer         2           API	
		5.1.1 Named Invokes	
		Limitations	
	J.2	Limitations	7
6	PSy la	yer 2	7
	6.1	Code Generation	.7
	6.2	API	
		6.2.1 InvokeSchedule visualisation	0
7	Trong	formations 3	12
/		Finding	
		Available	
		Kernels	
		7.3.1 Rules	
		7.3.2 Available Kernel Transformations	
	7.4	Applying	6
		7.4.1 Interactive	-6
		7.4.2 Script	-7
	7.5	OpenMP	
		7.5.1 Reductions	
		7.5.2 Restrictions	_
		OpenCL	
	7.7	OpenACC	U
8	Distri	buted Memory 5	1
		Correctness	
	8.2	Performance	1
	8.3	Implementation	1
	8.4	Control	2
	8.5	Status	2
9	Built-i	ins 5	(2
9		Example	
		Supported Built-in operations	
		Adding new additional Built-in operations	
10		mo0.3 API	
	10.1	Algorithm	,9

		10.1.1 Example	. 59
		10.1.2 Field	. 60
		10.1.3 Field Vector	. 60
		10.1.4 Scalar	. 60
		10.1.5 Operator	
		10.1.6 Column-Wise Operator	
		10.1.7 Quadrature	
		10.1.8 Stencils	
		10.1.9 Inter-grid	
	10.2	PSy-layer	
	10.2	10.2.1 Module name	
	10.3		
	10.5		
		10.3.1 Rules for all User-Supplied Kernels	
		10.3.2 Rules specific to General-Purpose Kernels without CMA Operators	
		10.3.3 Rules for Kernels that work with CMA Operators	
		10.3.4 Rules for Inter-Grid Kernels	
		10.3.5 Metadata	
		10.3.6 Subroutine	
	10.4	Built-ins	. 78
		10.4.1 Naming scheme	. 78
		10.4.2 Addition	. 79
		10.4.3 Subtraction	. 81
		10.4.4 Multiplication	
		10.4.5 Scaling	
		10.4.6 Division	
		10.4.7 Setting to value	
		10.4.8 Raising to power	
		10.4.9 Inner product	
		10.4.10 Sum of elements	
	10.5		
	10.5		
	10.0		
	10.7	Configuration	
	100	10.7.1 Annexed DoFs	
	10.8	Transformations	. 88
11	$CO_{\alpha}$	rean1.0 API	93
	11.1	Introduction	
	11.2	The GOcean Library	
		11.2.1 Grid	
		11.2.2 Fields	
		11.2.3 Example	
	11.3	Algorithm	
		11.3.1 Invokes	
	11.4	Kernel	
		11.4.1 Metadata	. 98
		11.4.2 Subroutine	. 103
	11.5	Built-ins	. 104
	11.6	Conventions	. 104
	11.7	Configuration	. 105
		11.7.1 Iteration-spaces	
	11.8	Transformations	
12	NEM	MO API	109
	12.1	Algorithm	. 109

	12.2	Constructing the PSyIR	
	12.3	Example	
	12.4	Transformations	
		Limitations	
13	Stub	Generation 1	13
	13.1	Quick Start	13
	13.2	Introduction	13
	13.3	Use	14
	13.4	Kernels	14
	13.5	Example	15
		Errors	
14	Line	length 1	19
	14.1	Script	19
	14.2	Interactive	19
	14.3	Limitations	20
15	Fortr	ran Naming Conventions 1	21
16	API	1	23
	16.1	The generator module	23
	16.2	The parse module	
	16.3	The transformations module	
	16.4	The psyGen module	
	16.5	The alg_gen module	
	16.6	The line_length module	
17	Profil		47
	17.1	Profiling API	47
		17.1.1 ProfileInit()	47
		17.1.2 ProfileFinalise()	47
		17.1.3 ProfileStart()/ProfileEnd()	48
	17.2	Profiling Command Line Options	48
	17.3	Profiling in Scripts - ProfileRegionTransform	50
	17.4	Interface to Third Party Profiling Tools	50
18	-		51
	18.1	Introduction	
		18.1.1 Mechanism	
		18.1.2 Restrictions	52
	18.2	Use	52
19	Syste	m-specific Set-up for Users	55
			55
		19.1.1 Installing dependencies on Ubuntu	
		19.1.2 Installing dependencies on OpenSUSE	
	19.2	Installing PSyclone	
	19.3	Common installation	
	17.0		-0
20		8	57
	20.1	Options	57
		20.1.1 DEFAULT Section	58
		20.1.2 Common Sections	58

20.1.3	dynamo0.3 Section	. 159					
20.1.4	gocean1.0 Section	. 159					
20.1.5	NEMO Section	. 159					
Bibliography		161					
Python Module Index							
Index		165					

PSyclone, the PSy code generator, is being developed for use in finite element, finite volume and finite difference codes. PSyclone development started with the aim to support the emerging API in the GungHo project for a finite element dynamical core.

The GungHo project was initiated in 2011 to address challenges of weather and climate prediction on the next generation of supercomputers. The project ran for 5 years as a collaboration between the Met Office, NERC (via NERC funded academics) and STFC. It laid a foundation for redesign of the heart of the Met Office's Unified Model, known as the dynamical core, from the choices of numerical methods and model grids to the implementation of parallel algorithms that will scale to millions of cores.

The software infrastructure based on the GungHo project recommendations is now being developed in the LFRic project and is expected to be operational in 2022. Its development is led by the requirements to support multiple meshes and element types, thus allowing for future model development.

GungHo also proposed a novel separation of concerns for the software implementation of the dynamical core. This approach distinguishes between three layers: the Algorithm layer, the Kernel layer and the Parallelisation System (PSy) layer. Together this separation is termed PSyKAl.

The Algorithm layer specifies the algorithm that the scientist would like to run (in terms of calls to kernel routines and built-in operations) and logically operates on full fields.

The Kernel layer provides the implementation of the code kernels as subroutines. These subroutines operate on local fields (a set of elements, a vertical column, or a set of vertical columns, depending on the kernel).

The PSy layer sits in-between the algorithm and kernel layers and its primary role is to provide node-based parallel performance for the target architecture. The PSy layer can be optimised for a particular hardware architecture, such as multi-core, many-core, GPGPUs, or some combination thereof with no change to the algorithm or kernel layer code. This approach therefore offers the potential for portable performance.

Rather than writing the PSy layer manually, the PSyclone code generation system can help a user to optimise the code for a particular architecture (by providing optimisations such as blocking, loop merging, inlining etc), or alternatively, generate the PSy layer automatically.

PSyclone is also being extended to support an API being developed in the GOcean project for two finite difference ocean model benchmarks, one of which is based on the NEMO ocean model.

CONTENTS 1

2 CONTENTS

ONE

#### **GETTING GOING**

#### 1.1 Download

The following instructions are intended for a PSyclone user who wants to work with a released version of the code. If you are a developer or wish to test a specific branch of PSyclone from the GitHub repository please see Installation in the Developers' guide.

PSyclone is available on the Python Package Index (pypi.org) and is hosted on GitHub:

```
https://github.com/stfc/PSyclone
```

The latest release is 1.7.0 and the latest stable version is on the master branch.

PSyclone can be installed using pip:

```
> pip install psyclone
```

or downloaded from github - either see 1.7.0 in the releases tab on the PSyclone page or download and extract the latest release of PSyclone directly, e.g.

```
> wget https://github.com/stfc/PSyclone/archive/1.7.0.tar.gz
> tar zxf 1.7.0.tar.gz
> ls
PSyclone-1.7.0
```

Hereon the location where you download or clone PSyclone (including the PSyclone directory itself) will be referred to as <PSYCLONEHOME>.

# 1.2 Dependencies

PSyclone is written in Python so needs Python to be installed on the target machine. PSyclone has been tested under Python 2.7 and 3.6.

**Warning:** Release 1.6.0 of PSyclone requires version 0.0.7 of fparser and will fail on more recent versions. However simply installing this version using pip will install a later version of fparser. The suggested solution is to use release 1.6.1 which fixes this problem and is otherwise identical to 1.6.0. However, if you want to use release 1.6.0 you need to ensure that you have fparser 0.0.7. This can be achieved by downgrading an existing fparser installation or by installing version 0.0.7 of fparser *before* installing PSyclone.

PSyclone immediately relies on four external Python packages; six, configparser, fparser and pyparsing. In order to run the test suite py.test is required. The easiest way to satisfy the Python dependencies is to use the Python Package Index (pypi.org) and pip. See https://packaging.python.org/installing/ for more information.

If everything is working correctly then using pip to install PSyclone:

```
> pip install psyclone
```

will automatically install the Python dependencies (fparser and pyparsing).

In addition to the mandatory dependencies just described, PSyclone also has optional dependencies on both graphviz and termcolor. PSyclone can use graphviz to produce a visualisation of a schedule's dependency graph. If this is desired then the Python package graphviz (for the Python bindings) as well as the graphviz package itself must be installed. If the graphviz package is not available then the associated PSyclone routines will return silently and no visualisations will be produced. The Python package termcolor is used for pretty-printing a schedule in terminals that support coloured text. If the package is not available then the schedule is simply printed in plain text without colour highlighting.

#### 1.2.1 System-specific set-up

System-specific Set-up for Users instructions are available for Ubuntu 14.04.2 and OpenSUSE 42.2.

#### 1.2.2 fparser

The fparser package (https://github.com/stfc/fparser) is a Fortran parser originally developed as a part of the f2py project.

The minimum version of fparser required by PSyclone is currently 0.0.8 but we strongly recommend you install the latest version to reduce the chance of encountering problems when parsing existing algorithm or kernel code. (Note that for older versions of PSyclone up to and including 1.5.1 you must use version 0.0.6 of fparser.)

fparser is available from the Python Package Index and thus may be installed using pip (https://packaging.python.org/installing/#requirements-for-installing-packages):

```
> pip install fparser
```

If you do not have sufficient permissions to perform a system-wide install then you can instruct pip to do a user-local install:

```
> pip install --user fparser
```

Should you wish to remove fparser then simply do:

```
> pip uninstall fparser
```

If you have already installed fparser and want to upgrade to the latest version simply do:

```
> pip install fparser --upgrade
```

### 1.2.3 pyparsing

PSyclone requires pyparsing, a library designed to allow parsers to be be built in Python. PSyclone uses pyparsing to parse fortran regular expressions as fparser does not fully parse these, (see http://pyparsing.wikispaces.com for more information).

PSyclone has been tested with pyparsing versions 1.5.2, 2.0.1 and 2.2.0.

You can test whether pyparsing is already installed on your machine by typing import pyparsing from the python command line. If pyparsing is installed, this command will complete successfully. If pyparsing is installed you can check its version by typing pyparsing. \_\_version\_\_ after successfully importing it.

If pyparsing is not installed on your system then it may be installed from the Python Package Index using pip:

```
> pip install pyparsing
```

Should you wish to, uninstalling is simply performed by doing:

```
> pip uninstall pyparsing
```

If you do not have sufficient privileges for a system-wide install then you can instruct pip to do a user-local install:

```
> pip install --user pyparsing
```

Alternatively, you could follow the instructions here http://pyparsing.wikispaces.com/Download+and+Installation.

#### 1.2.4 graphviz

The data dependencies of a PSyIR schedule determine the validity of changes to this schedule. PSyclone supports the visualisation of these dependencies as a graph using graphviz. This visualisation is not needed to use PSyclone.

If the Python bindings to graphviz are not installed on your system then it may be installed from the Python Package Index using pip:

```
> sudo pip install graphviz
```

Should you wish to, uninstalling is simply performed by doing:

```
> sudo pip uninstall graphviz
```

If you do not have sufficient privileges for a system-wide install then you can instruct pip to do a user-local install:

```
> pip install --user graphviz
```

If graphviz itself is not installed on your system and your system supports the apt package manager then see below, otherwise please refer to the download and install instructions which are available here http://www.graphviz.org/Download..php.

If your system supports the apt package manager then it can be installed and removed in the following way:

```
> sudo apt install graphviz
> sudo apt remove graphviz
```

#### 1.2.5 termcolor

By default, the view() method available on any PSyIR (PSyclone Internal Representation) object prints a plain-text representation to standard-out. However, if the termcolor package is available then PSyclone uses this to add colour highlighting to the output text.

Installation (and uninstallation) of this package can be done via pip in exactly the same way as for graphviz, as described above.

#### 1.2.6 py.test

The PSyclone test suite uses py.test. This is not needed to use PSyclone but is useful to check whether PSyclone is working correctly on your system. You can test whether it is already installed by simply typing py.test at a shell prompt. If it is present you will get output that begins with

1.2. Dependencies 5

If you do not have it then py.test can again be installed using pip or from here http://pytest.org/latest/ (or specifically here http://pytest.org/latest/getting-started.html).

#### 1.3 Environment

In order to use PSyclone (including running the test suite and building documentation) you will need to install it. The simplest way to do this is to use pip with the supplied setup.py file:

```
> cd <PSYCLONEHOME>
> pip install .
```

By default pip will attempt a system-wide install. If you wish to do a user-local install instead then supply the --user flag:

```
> pip install --user .
```

This installs the PSyclone modules in ~/.local/lib/pythonX.Y/site-packages (where X.Y is the version of Python that you are using) and the 'psyclone' script in ~/.local/bin. Depending on your linux distribution, you may need to add the latter location to your \$PATH.

If for some reason you'd rather not use pip then you can run the setup manually:

```
> python setup.py install
```

or, if you don't have root access:

```
> python setup.py install --user
```

or,

```
> python setup.py install --prefix /my/install/path
```

If using the latter method then it will be necessary to take further action to ensure PSyclone can find the configuration file installed as a part of this process - see below.

# 1.4 Configuration

Various aspects of PSyclone are configured through a configuration file, psyclone.cfg. The default version of this file is installed to <python-base-prefix>/shared/psyclone/ during the installation process. If a system-wide installation is being performed then this will be something like /usr/share/psyclone/. If a user-local installation is performed (--user flag to pip install) then the location will be something like ~/.local/share/psyclone/.

**Warning:** if PSyclone is installed to a non-standard location (e.g. by specifying the --prefix=/some/path option to pip install) then PSyclone will not be able to find the configuration file at execution time. There are two solutions to this: 1. copy the configuration file to a location where PSyclone will find it (see *Configuration*) or 2. set the PSYCLONE\_CONFIG environment variable to the full-path to the configuration file, e.g.:

```
> export PSYCLONE_CONFIG=/some/path/PSyclone/config/psyclone.cfg
```

**Warning:** when installing in 'editable' mode (-e flag to pip), pip does *not* install the configuration file. You will have to take one of the two actions described above.

See *Configuration* for details of the settings contained within the config file.

#### 1.5 Test

You can install the necessary dependencies to run the PSyclone tests with:

```
> pip install psyclone[test]
```

The test dependencies are canonically documented in PSyclone's setup.py under the extras\_requires section.

Once you have the necessary dependencies installed and your environment configured, you can check that things are working by using the PSyclone test suite. These tests are not required and can be skipped if preferred:

```
> cd <PSYCLONEHOME>/src/psyclone/tests
> py.test
```

If everything is working as expected then you should see output similar to:

Most of the tests use Fortran source files in the <PSYCLONEHOME>/src/psyclone/tests directory and many of them can be compiled during the testing process. To enable compilation testing run:

```
> py.test --compile --f90="<compiler_name>" --f90flags="<compiler_flags_list>"
```

"<compiler\_name>" and "<compiler\_flags\_list>" are optional arguments. The default value for "<compiler\_name>" is "gfortran" and there are no defaults for the "<compiler\_flags\_list>". Please note that the onus is on the user to provide correct values for these options. Full details are provided in the Compilation testing section.

#### 1.6 Run

You are now ready to try running PSyclone on the examples. One way of doing this is to use the psyclone driver script. Assuming it is on your PATH:

1.5. Test 7

As indicated above, the psyclone script takes the name of the Fortran source file containing the algorithm specification (in terms of calls to invoke()). It parses this, finds the necessary kernel source files and produces two Fortran files. The first contains the PSy, middle layer and the second a re-write of the algorithm code to use that layer. These files are named according to the user-supplied arguments (options -oalg and -opsy). If those arguments are not supplied then the script writes the generated/re-written Fortran to the terminal. For details of the other command-line arguments please see the *PSyclone Script* Section.

Examples are provided in the examples directory. There are 3 subdirectories (dynamo, gocean and nemo) corresponding to different APIs that are supported by PSyclone. In this case we are going to use one of the dynamo examples:

```
> cd <PSYCLONEHOME>/examples/dynamo/eg1
> psyclone -api dynamo0.1 \
> -oalg dynamo_alg.f90 -opsy dynamo_psy.f90 dynamo.F90
```

You should see two new files created called dynamo\_alg.f90 (containing the re-written algorithm layer) and dynamo\_psy.f90 (containing the generated PSy- or middle-layer). Since this is a dynamo example the Fortran source code has dependencies on the dynamo system and therefore cannot be compiled stand-alone.

You can also use the runme.py example to see the interactive API in action. This script contains:

```
from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
# This example uses version 0.1 of the Dynamo API
api = "dynamo0.1"
# Parse the file containing the algorithm specification and
# return the Abstract Syntax Tree and invokeInfo objects
ast, invokeInfo = parse("dynamo.F90", api=api)
# Create the PSy-layer object using the invokeInfo
psy = PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)
# Generate the Fortran code for the PSy layer
print (psy.gen)
# List the invokes that the PSy layer has
print (psy.invokes.names)
# Examine the 'schedule' (e.g. loop structure) that each
# invoke has
schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0_v3_kernel_type').schedule
schedule.view()
schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_1_v3_solver_kernel_type').schedule
schedule.view()
```

It can be run non-interactively as follows:

```
> cd <PSYCLONEHOME>/example/dynamo/eg1
> python runme.py
```

However, to understand this example in more depth it is instructive to cut-and-paste from the runme.py file into your own, interactive python session:

```
> cd <PSYCLONEHOME>/example/dynamo/eg1
> python
```

In addition to the runme.py script, there is also runme\_openmp.py which illustrates how one applies an OpenMP transform to a loop schedule within the PSy layer. The initial part of this script is the same as that of runme.py (above) and is therefore omitted here:

```
# List the various invokes that the PSy layer contains
print (psy.invokes.names)
# Get the loop schedule associated with one of these
# invokes
schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_v3_kernel_type').schedule
schedule.view()
# Get the list of possible loop transformations
from psyclone.psyGen import TransInfo
t = TransInfo()
print(t.list)
# Create an OpenMPLoop-transformation object
ol = t.get_trans_name('OMPLoopTrans')
# Apply it to the loop schedule of the selected invoke
new_schedule, memento = ol.apply(schedule.children[0])
new_schedule.view()
# Replace the original loop schedule of the selected invoke
# with the new, transformed schedule
psy.invokes.get('invoke_v3_kernel_type')._schedule = new_schedule
# Generate the Fortran code for the new PSy layer
print (psy.gen)
```

1.6. Run 9

**TWO** 

#### **EXAMPLES**

Various examples of the use of PSyclone are provided under the examples directory. All of these examples require that PSyclone be installed on the host system, see *Getting Going*. This document is intended to provide an overview of the various examples so that a user can find one that is appropriate to them. For details of how to run each example please see the README files in the associated directories.

#### 2.1 GOcean

#### 2.1.1 Example 1: Loop transformations

Examples of applying various transformations (loop fusion, OpenMP, OpenACC) to the semi-PSyKAl'd version of the Shallow benchmark. ("semi" because not all kernels are called from within invoke()'s.) Also includes an example of generating a DAG from an InvokeSchedule.

#### 2.1.2 Example 2: OpenACC

This is a simple but complete example of using PSyclone to enable an application to run on a GPU by adding OpenACC directives. A Makefile is included which will use PSyclone to generate the PSy code and transformed kernels and then compile the application. This compilation requires that the dl\_esm\_inf library (github.com/stfc/dl\_esm\_inf) be installed.

#### 2.1.3 Example 3: OpenCL

Example of the use of PSyclone to generate an OpenCL version of the PSy layer. The kernels are not yet transformed automatically (Issue #249).

#### 2.1.4 Example 4: Kernels containing use statements

Transforming kernels for use with either OpenACC or OpenCL requires that we handle those that access data and/or routines via module *use* statements. This example shows the various forms for which support is planned (Issues #323 and #342).

# 2.2 Dynamo

Examples 1 and 2 are for the (deprecated) Dynamo 0.1 API. The remaining examples are all for the Dynamo 0.3 API.

#### 2.2.1 Example 1

Basic operation of PSyclone with invoke()'s containing just one kernel for the Dynamo 0.1 API. Also includes an example of transforming for OpenMP.

#### 2.2.2 Example 2

A more complex example for the Dynamo 0.1 API containing multi-kernel invokes. Provides examples of OpenMP and loop fusion transformations.

#### 2.2.3 Example 3

Shows the use of colouring and OpenMP for the Dynamo 0.3 API. Includes multi-kernel, named invokes with both user-supplied and built-in kernels.

#### 2.2.4 Example 4

Demonstrates the use of the special enforce\_bc\_kernel which PSyclone recognises as a boundary-condition kernel.

#### 2.2.5 Example 5

Example of kernels which require stencil information.

#### 2.2.6 Example 6

Example of applying OpenMP to an InvokeSchedule containing kernels that perform reduction operations. Two scripts are provided, one of which demonstrates how to request that PSyclone generate code for a reproducible OpenMP reduction. (The default OpenMP reduction is not guaranteed to be reproducible from one run to the next on the same number of threads.)

#### 2.2.7 Example 7

Example of kernels requiring Column-Matrix Assembly operators.

#### 2.2.8 Example 8

Example of the use of the redundant-computation and move transformations to eliminate and re-order halo exchanges.

#### 2.2.9 Example 9

Demonstrates the behaviour of PSyclone for kernels that read and write quantities on horizontally-discontinuous function spaces. In addition, this example demonstrates how to write a PSyclone transformation script that only colours loops over continuous spaces.

#### 2.2.10 Example 10

Demonstrates the use of "inter-grid" kernels that prolong or restrict fields (map between grids of different resolutions).

#### 2.2.11 Example 11

Example of the use of transformations to introduce redundant computation, split synchronous halo exchanges into asynchronous exchanges (start and stop) and move the starts of those exchanges in order to overlap them with computation.

#### 2.2.12 Example 12

Example of applying code extraction to Nodes in an Invoke Schedule:

```
> psyclone -nodm -s ./extract_nodes.py \
   gw_mixed_schur_preconditioner_alg_mod.x90
```

or to a Kernel in an Invoke after applying transformations:

```
> psyclone -nodm -s ./extract_kernel_with_transformations.py \ gw_mixed_schur_preconditioner_alg_mod.x90
```

For now it only inserts comments in appropriate locations while the full support for code extraction is being developed.

This example also contains a Python helper script find\_kernel.py which displays the names and Schedules of Invokes containing call(s) to the specified Kernel:

```
> python find_kernel.py
```

#### **2.3 NEMO**

These examples may all be found in the PSyclone/examples/nemo directory.

### 2.3.1 Example 1: OpenMP parallelisation of tra\_adv

Demonstrates the use of PSyclone to parallelise the loops over vertical levels in a NEMO tracer-advection benchmark using OpenMP.

### 2.3.2 Example 2: OpenMP parallelisation of traidf\_iso

Demonstrates the use of PSyclone to parallelise the loops over vertical levels in some NEMO tracer-diffusion code using OpenMP.

#### 2.3.3 Example 3: OpenACC parallelisation of tra\_adv

Demonstrates the introduction of simple OpenACC parallelisation (using the data and kernels directives) for a NEMO tracer-advection benchmark.

2.3. NEMO 13

THREE

#### **PSYCLONE SCRIPT**

The simplest way to run PSyclone is to use the psyclone script. If you installed PSyclone using pip then this script should be available on your PATH (see *Environment* for more details). Alternatively it can be found in the <PSYCLONEHOME>/bin directory. The script takes an algorithm file as input and outputs modified algorithm code and generated PSy code. This section walks through its functionality.

# 3.1 Running

The psyclone script is executable and designed to be run from the command line, e.g.:

```
> psyclone <args>
```

The optional -h argument gives a description of the options provided by the script:

```
> psyclone -h
usage: psyclone [-h] [-oalg OALG] [-opsy OPSY] [-okern OKERN] [-api API]
               [-s SCRIPT] [-d DIRECTORY] [-I INCLUDE] [-1] [-dm] [-nodm]
                [--kernel-renaming {multiple, single}]
                [--profile {invokes,kernels}]
                [--force-profile {invokes, kernels}] [-v] filename
Run the PSyclone code generator on a particular file
positional arguments:
 filename
                       algorithm-layer source code
optional arguments:
 -h, --help
                       show this help message and exit
                      filename of transformed algorithm code
 -oalg OALG
 -opsy OPSY
                      filename of generated PSy code
 -okern OKERN
                      directory in which to put transformed kernels
                       choose a particular api from ['dynamo0.1',
 -api API
                       'dynamo0.3', 'gocean0.1', 'gocean1.0', 'nemo'],
                       default 'dynamo0.3'.
 -s SCRIPT, --script SCRIPT
                        filename of a PSyclone optimisation script
 -d DIRECTORY, --directory DIRECTORY
                       path to root of directory structure containing kernel
                       source code
 -I INCLUDE, --include INCLUDE
                       path to Fortran INCLUDE files (nemo API only)
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
-1, --limit
                 limit the fortran line length to 132 characters
-dm, --dist mem
                     generate distributed memory code
-nodm, --no_dist_mem do not generate distributed memory code
--kernel-renaming {single, multiple}
                      Naming scheme to use when re-naming transformed
                      kernels.
--profile {invokes, kernels}, -p {invokes, kernels}
                      Add profiling hooks for either 'kernels' or 'invokes'
--force-profile {invokes, kernels}
                      Add profiling hooks for either 'kernels' or 'invokes'
                      even if a transformation script is used. Use at your
                      own risk.
-v, --version
                     Display version information (1.6.0)
```

#### 3.2 Basic Use

The simplest way to use psyclone is to provide it with an algorithm file:

```
> psyclone alg.f90
```

If the algorithm file is invalid for some reason, the script should return with an appropriate error. For example, if we use the Python genkernelstub script as an algorithm file we get the following:

```
> psyclone <PSYCLONEHOME>/bin/genkernelstub
...
1:#!/usr/bin/env python <== no parse pattern found for "#" in 'BeginSource' block.
'Parse Error: Fatal error in external fparser tool'
```

If the algorithm file is valid then the modified algorithm code and the generated PSy code will be output to the terminal screen.

# 3.3 Choosing the API

In the previous section we relied on PSyclone using the default API. The default API, along with the supported APIs can be seen by running the psyclone script with the -h option.

If you use a particular API frequently and it is not the default then you can change the default by creating a copy of the default psyclone.cfg file and editing it. See *Configuration* for more details.

If your code uses an API that is different to the default then you can specify this as an argument to the psyclone script.

```
> psyclone -api dynamo0.1 alg.f90
```

# 3.4 File output

By default the modified algorithm code and the generated PSy code are output to the terminal. These can instead be output to files by using the <code>-oalg</code> <file> and <code>-opsy</code> <file> options, respectively. For example, the following will output the generated PSy code to the file 'psy.f90' but the algorithm code will be output to the terminal:

```
> psyclone -opsy psy.f90 alg.f90
```

If PSyclone is being used to transform Kernels then the location to write these to is specified using the <code>-okern <directory></code> option. If this is not supplied then they are written to the current working directory. By default, PSyclone will overwrite any kernel of the same name in that directory. To change this behaviour, the user can use the <code>--no\_kernel\_clobber</code> option. This causes PSyclone to re-name any transformed kernel that would clash with any of those already present in the output directory.

# 3.5 Algorithm files with no invokes

If the psyclone script is provided with a file that contains no invoke calls then the script outputs a warning to stdout and copies the input file to stdout, or to the specified algorithm file (if the -oalg <file> option is used). No PSy code will be output. If a file is specified using the -opsy <file> option this file will not be created.

```
> psyclone -opsy psy.f90 -oalg alg_new.f90 empty_alg.f90
Warning: 'Algorithm Error: Algorithm file contains no invoke() calls: refusing to
generate empty PSy code'
```

# 3.6 Kernel search directory

When an algorithm file is parsed, the parser looks for the associated kernel files. The way in which this is done requires that any user-defined kernel routine (as opposed to *Built-ins*) called within an invoke must have an explicit use statement. For example, the following code gives an error:

(If the chosen API has any *Built-ins* defined then these will be listed within the [] in the above error message.) If the name of the kernel is provided in a use statement then the parser will look for a file with the same name as the module in the use statement. In the example below, the parser will look for a file called "testkern.f90" or "testkern.F90":

```
> cat use.f90
program use
  use testkern, only : testkern_type
  call invoke(testkern_type(a,b,c,d,e))
end program use
```

Therefore, for PSyclone to find kernel files, the module name of a kernel file must be the same as its filename. By default the parser looks for the kernel file in the same directory as the algorithm file. If this file is not found then an error is reported.

```
> psyclone use.f90
Kernel file 'testkern.[fF]90' not found in <location>
```

The -d option can be used to tell psyclone where to look for kernel files by supplying it with a directory. The script will recurse from the specified directory path to look for the required file. There must be only one instance of the specified file within (or below) the specified directory:

```
> cd <PSYCLONEHOME>/src/psyclone
> psyclone -d . use.f90
More than one match for kernel file 'testkern.[fF]90' found!
> psyclone -d tests/test_files/dynamo0p3 -api dynamo0.3 use.f90
[code output]
```

**Note:** The -d option is limited to a single directory. Therefore a current limitation in PSyclone is that all kernel files required by an algorithm file must exist within a directory hierarchy where their file names are unique.

# 3.7 Transformation script

By default the psyclone script will generate 'vanilla' PSy layer code. The -s option allows a Python script to be specified which can transform the PSy layer. This option is discussed in more detail in the *Script* section.

# 3.8 Fortran line length

By default the psyclone script will generate fortran code with no consideration of Fortran line-length limits. As the line-length limit for free-format Fortran is 132 characters, the code that is output may be non-conformant.

Line length is not an issue for many compilers as they allow compiler flags to be set which allow lines longer than the Fortran standard. However this is not the case for all compilers.

When the -1 option is specified to the psyclone script, the output will be line wrapped so that the output lines are always within the 132 character limit.

The -1 option also checks the parsed algorithm and kernel files for conformance and raises an error if they do not conform.

Line wrapping is not performed by default. There are two reasons for this. This first reason is that most compilers are able to cope with long lines. The second reason is that the line wrapping implementation could fail in certain pathological cases. The implementation and limitations of line wrapping are discussed in the *Limitations* section.

# 3.9 Distributed memory

By default the psyclone script will generate distributed memory (DM) code (i.e. parallelised using MPI). As with the choice of API, this default may be configured by editing psyclone.cfg - see *Configuration*. Alternatively, whether or not to generate DM code can be specified as an argument to the psyclone script using the -dm/--dist\_mem or -nodm/--no\_dist\_mem flags, respectively.

For details of PSyclone's support for generating DM code see *Distributed Memory*.

# 3.10 Automatic Profiling Instrumentation

The <code>--profile</code> option allows the user to instruct PSyclone to automatically insert profiling calls within the generated PSy code. Two options are provided, <code>invokes</code> and <code>kernels</code>. The first of these causes PSyclone to insert profiling-start and -stop calls at the beginning and end of every generated invoke routine. The second puts profiling calls around every kernel call (including the associated loops). The generated code must be linked against the PSyclone profiling interface and the profiling tool itself. The application that calls the PSyclone-generated code is responsible for

initialising and finalising the profiling library that is being used. For full details on the use of this profiling functionality please see the *Profiling* section.

### 3.11 Outputting of Transformed Kernels

When transforming kernels there are two use-cases to consider:

- 1. a given kernel will be transformed only once and that version then used from multiple, different Invokes and Algorithms;
- 2. a given kernel is used from multiple, different Invokes and Algorithms and is transformed differently, depending on the Invoke.

Whenever PSyclone is used to transform a kernel, the new kernel must be re-named in order to avoid clashing with other possible calls to the original. By default (--kernel-renaming multiple), PSyclone generates a new, unique name for each kernel that is transformed. Since PSyclone is run on one Algorithm file at a time, it uses the chosen kernel output directory (-okern) to ensure that names created by different invocations do not clash. Therefore, when building a single application, the same kernel output directory must be used for each separate invocation of PSyclone.

Alternatively, in order to support use case 1, a user may specify --kernel-renaming single: now, before transforming a kernel, PSyclone will check the kernel output directory and if a transformed version of that kernel is already present then that will be used. Note, if the kernel file on disk does not match with what would be generated then PSyclone will raise an exception.

#### 3.12 Fortran INCLUDE Files

For the NEMO API, if the source code to be processed by PSyclone contains INCLUDE statements (other than those for libraries such as MPI) then the location of any INCLUDE'd files must be supplied to PSyclone via the -I or --include option. (This is necessary because INCLUDE lines are a part of the Fortran language and must therefore be parsed - they are not handled by any pre-processing step.) Multiple locations may be specified by using multiple -I flags, e.g.:

```
> psyclone api "nemo" -I /some/path -I /some/other/path alg.f90
```

If no include paths are specified then the directory containing the source file currently being parsed is searched by default. If the specified include file is not found then ideally the INCLUDE line would be left unchanged. However, fparser currently treats any such INCLUDE lines as comments which results in them being lost (fparser issue #138). The workaround for this is to ensure that the location of *all* INCLUDE files is supplied to PSyclone.

Attempting to specify -I/--include for any API other than NEMO will be rejected by PSyclone.

**FOUR** 

#### **KERNEL LAYER**

In the PSyKAl separation of concerns, Kernel code (code which is created to run within the Kernel layer), works over a subset of a field (such as a column). The reason for doing this is that it gives the PSy layer the responsibility of calling the Kernel over the spatial domain which is where parallelism is typically exploited in finite element and finite difference codes. The PSy layer is therefore able to call the kernel layer in a flexible way (blocked and/or in parallel for example). Kernel code in the kernel layer is not allowed to include any parallelisation calls or directives and works on raw fortran arrays (to allow the compiler to optimise the code).

Since a Kernel is called over the spatial domain (by the PSy layer) it must take at least one field or operator as an argument.

#### 4.1 API

Kernels in the kernel layer are implemented as subroutines within fortran modules. One or more kernel modules are allowed, each of which can contain one or more kernel subroutines. In the example below there is one module integrate\_one\_module which contains one kernel subroutine integrate\_one\_code. The kernel subroutines contain the code that operates over a subset of the field (such as a column).

Metadata describing the kernel subroutines is required by the PSyclone system to generate appropriate PSy layer code. The metadata is written by the kernel developer and is kept with the kernel code in the same module using a sub-type of the kernel\_type type. In the example below the w3\_solver\_kernel\_type type specifies the appropriate metadata information describing the kernel code for the dynamo0.3 api:

```
module w3_solver_kernel_mod
  use kernel_mod,
                       only : kernel_type
                       only : r_def
  use constants_mod,
                       only : arg_type, func_type,
  use argument_mod,
                              GH_FIELD, GH_READ, GH_WRITE, W0, W3, &
                              GH_BASIS, GH_DIFF_BASIS, CELLS
  implicit none
  type, public, extends(kernel_type) :: w3_solver_kernel_type
   private
    type(arg_type) :: meta_args(4) = (/
         arg_type(GH_FIELD, GH_WRITE, W3),
         arg_type(GH_FIELD,
                              GH_READ,
                                        W3),
         arg_type(GH_FIELD*3, GH_READ,
                                        WO),
         arg_type (GH_REAL,
                              GH_READ)
         /)
    type(func_type) :: meta_funcs(2) = (/
                                                        S.
         func_type(W3, GH_BASIS),
                                                        δ
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
func_type(W0, GH_DIFF_BASIS)
   integer :: gh_shape = gh_quadrature_XYoZ
   integer :: iterates_over = CELLS
 contains
   procedure, nopass :: solver_w3_code
 end type
contains
 subroutine solver_w3_code(nlayers,
                                                                      2
                            x, rhs,
                            chi_1, chi_2, chi_3, ascalar,
                            ndf_w3, undf_w3, map_w3, w3_basis,
                            ndf_w0, undf_w0, map_w0, w0_diff_basis, &
                            nqp_h, nqp_v, wqp_h, wqp_v)
 end subroutine solver_w3_code
end module w3_solver_kernel_mod
```

#### 4.2 Metadata

Kernel metadata is not required if the PSy layer is going to be written manually - its sole purpose is to let PSyclone know how to generate the PSy layer. The content of Kernel metadata differs depending on the particular API and this information can be found in the API-specific sections of this document.

In all APIs the kernel metadata is implemented as an extension of the *kernel\_type* type. The reason for using a type to specify metadata is that it allows the metadata to be kept with the code and for it to be compilable. In addition, currently all APIs will contain information about the arguments in an array called meta\_args, a specification of what the kernel code iterates over in a variable called iterates\_over and a reference to the kernel code as a type bound procedure.

```
type, extends(kernel_type) :: integrate_one_kernel
...
  type(...) :: meta_args(...) = (/ ... /)
...
  integer :: ITERATES_OVER = ...
  contains
...
  procedure ...
  end type integrate_one_kernel
```

**FIVE** 

#### ALGORITHM LAYER

In the PSyKAl separation of concerns, the Algorithm layer specifies the algorithm that the scientist would like to run (in terms of calls to kernel routines and Built-in operations) and logically operates on full fields. Algorithm code in the algorithm layer is not allowed to include any parallelisation calls or directives and passes datatypes specified by the particular API.

#### 5.1 API

The Algorithm layer is forbidden from calling the Kernel layer directly. In PSyclone, if the programmer would like to call a Kernel routine or a Built-in operation from the algorithm layer they must use the <code>invoke</code> call (which is common to all APIs). The <code>invoke</code> call is not necessary (and indeed will not work) if the PSy layer is written manually.

To make an invoke call, the algorithm layer developer adds one or more call invoke () statements to their code and within the content of the invoke call they add a reference to the required Kernel/Built-in and the data to pass to it. For example,

```
call invoke(integrate_one_kernel(arg1,arg2))
...
```

For more information on the concept of Built-in operations see the *Built-ins* Section. Details of which operations are supported for a specific API are given in the documentation of that API.

The algorithm layer can consist of an arbitrary number of files containing fortran code, any of which may contain as many invoke() calls as is required. PSyclone is applied to an individual algorithm layer file and must therefore be run multiple times if multiple files containing invoke() calls exist in the algorithm layer.

The algorithm developer is also able to reference more than one Kernel/Built-in within an invoke. In fact this feature is encouraged for performance reasons. **As a general guideline the developer should aim to use as few invokes as possible with as many Kernel references within them as is possible**. The reason for this is that it allows for greater freedom for optimisation in the PSy layer as PSy layer optimisations are limited to the contents of individual invoke calls - PSyclone currently does not attempt to optimise the PSy layer over multiple invoke calls.

As well as generating the PSy layer code, PSyclone modifies the Algorithm layer code, replacing invoke calls with calls to the generated PSy layer so that the algorithm code is compilable and linkable to the PSy layer and adding in the appropriate use statement. For example, the above integrate\_one\_kernel invoke is translated into something like the following:

```
use psy, only : invoke_0_integrate_one_kernel
...
call invoke_0_integrate_one_kernel(arg1, arg2)
...
```

You may have noticed from other examples in this guide that an algorithm specification in an invoke call references the metadata type in an invoke call, not the code directly; this is by design.

For example, in the invoke call below, integrate\_one\_kernel is used.

```
call invoke(integrate_one_kernel(arg1,arg2))
...
```

integrate\_one\_kernel is the name of the metadata type in the module, not the name of the subroutine in the Kernel ...

#### 5.1.1 Named Invokes

PSyclone permits the user to optionally specify a label for an invoke call like so:

The name argument to the invoke call is optional. If supplied it must be a string literal. The content of this string (with any spaces replaced by '\_' characters) is used in naming the corresponding PSy-layer routine generated by PSyclone. So, for the above example, the generated PSy-layer subroutine will be named "invoke\_compute\_something." Each invoke label must currently be unique within an Algorithm source file. Note that, in keeping with the Fortran language, labels are not case sensitive and, after having any spaces replaced by underscores, must be valid Fortran names (e.g. name="compute(1)" is invalid). In the future it is intended that the labelling of invokes will help to support invoke-specific optimisations to be applied as well as enabling more readable profiling output. It may also be used to instruct PSyclone to just generate a single subroutine to implement all invokes that share the same label.

#### 5.2 Limitations

In order to re-write the Algorithm layer, as just described, PSyclone must obviously be able to parse the invoke calls. Since the Fortran expression parser used by PSyclone is relatively simple, this means there are limitations on what Fortran may be used when specifying kernel arguments in an invoke call. Since these limitations can have a direct impact on the natural science code, the PSyclone developers endeavour to keep them to a minimum.

The current list of known limitations/restrictions on the form of kernel arguments within an invoke is:

• No arithmetic expressions (e.g. kernel\_type (a+b) or kernel\_type (-a))

• No named (optional) arguments (e.g. kernel\_type (fn (my\_arg=a)))

If you encounter any other limitations (or have a burning desire to use one of the above forms) then please contact the PSyclone developers.

5.2. Limitations 25

SIX

#### **PSY LAYER**

In the PSyKAl separation of concerns, the PSy layer is responsible for linking together the Algorithm and Kernel layers and for providing the implementation of any Built-in operations used. Its functional responsibilities are to

- 1. map the arguments supplied by an Algorithm invoke call to the arguments required by a Built-in or Kernel call (as these will not have a one-to-one correspondance).
- 2. call any Kernel routines such that they cover the required iteration space and
- 3. perform any Built-in operations (either by including the necessary code directly in the PSy layer or by e.g. calling a maths library) and
- 4. include any required distributed memory operations such as halo swaps and reductions.

Its other role is to allow the optimisation expert to optimise any required distributed memory operations, include and optimise any shared memory parallelism and optimise for single node (e.g. cache and vectorisation) performance.

#### 6.1 Code Generation

The PSy layer can be written manually but this is error prone and potentially complex to optimise. The PSyclone code generation system generates the PSy layer so there is no need to write the code manually.

To generate correct PSy layer code, PSyclone needs to understand the arguments and datatypes passed by the algorithm layer and the arguments and datatypes expected by the Kernel layer; it needs to know the name of the Kernel subroutine(s); it needs to know the iteration space that the Kernel(s) is/are written to iterate over; it also needs to know the ordering of Kernels and Built-ins as specified in the algorithm layer. Finally, it needs to know where to place any distributed memory operations.

PSyclone determines the above information by being told the API in question (by the user), by reading the appropriate Kernel and Built-in metadata and by reading the order of Kernels and Built-ins in an invoke call (as specified in the algorithm layer).

PSyclone has an API-specific parsing stage which reads the algorithm layer and all associated Kernel metadata. This information is passed to a PSy-generation stage which creates a high level view of the PSy layer. From this high level view the PSy-generation stage can generate the required PSy code.

For example, the following Python code shows a code being parsed, a PSy-generation object being created using the output from the parser and the PSy layer code being generated by the PSy-generation object.

```
from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory

# This example uses version 0.1 of the Dynamo API
api = "dynamo0.1"
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
# Parse the file containing the algorithm specification and
# return the Abstract Syntax Tree and invokeInfo objects
ast, invokeInfo = parse("dynamo.F90", api=api)

# Create the PSy-layer object using the invokeInfo
psy = PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)
# Generate the Fortran code for the PSy layer
print psy.gen
```

#### 6.2 API

The PSy-layer of a single algorithm file is represented by the **PSy** class. The PSy class has an **Invokes** object which contain one or more **Invoke** instances (one for each invoke in the algorithm layer). Each **Invoke** has an **InvokeSchedule** object with the PSyIR tree that describes the PSy layer invoke subroutine. This subroutine is called by the Algorithm layer and itself calls one or more kernels and/or implements any required Built-in operations.

All this classes can be specialised in each PSyclone API to support the specific features of the APIs. The class diagram for the above base classes is shown below using the dynamo0.3 API as an illustration. This class diagram was generated from the source code with pyreverse and edited with inkscape.



The InvokeSchedule can currently contain nodes of type: **Loop**, **Kernel**, **Built-in** (see the *Built-ins* section), **Directive** (of various types), **HaloExchange**, or **GlobalSum** (the latter two are only used if distributed memory is supported and is switched on; see the *Distributed Memory* section). The order of the tree (depth first) indicates the order of the associated Fortran code.

PSyclone will initially create a "vanilla" (functionally correct but not optimised) InvokeSchedule. This "vanilla" InvokeSchedule can be modified by changing the objects within it. For example, the order that two Kernel calls appear in the generated code can be changed by changing their order in the tree. The ability to modify this high level view of a InvokeSchedule allows the PSy layer to be optimised for a particular architecture (by applying optimisations such as blocking, loop merging, inlining, OpenMP parallelisation etc.). The tree could be manipulated directly, however, to simplify optimisation, a set of transformations are supplied. These transformations are discussed in the next section.

## 6.2.1 InvokeSchedule visualisation

PSyclone supports visualising an InvokeSchedule (or any other PSyIR node) in two ways. Firstly the *view()* method outputs textual information about the contents of a PSyIR node. If we were to look at the dynamo eg6 example we would see the following output:

```
>>> schedule.view()
InvokeSchedule[invoke='invoke_0', dm=True]
   Directive[OMP parallel do]
      Loop[type='dofs',field_space='any_space_1',it_space='dofs']
      Call setval_X_code(p,z)
      Call X_innerproduct_Y_code(rs_old,res,z)
GlobalSum[scalar='rs_old']
```

The above output tells us that the invoke name for the InvokeSchedule we are looking at is *invoke\_0* and that the distributed\_memory option has been switched on. Within the InvokeSchedule is an OpenMP parallel directive containing a loop which itself contains two builtin calls. As the latter of the two builtin calls requires a reduction and distributed memory is switched on, PSyclone has added a GlobalSum call for the appropriate scalar.

Secondly, the dag() method (standing for directed acyclic graph), outputs the PSyIR nodes and its data dependencies. By default a file in dot format is output with the name dag and a file in svg format is output with the name dag.svg. The file name can be changed using the file\_name optional argument and the output file format can be changed using the file\_format value is simply passed on to graphviz so the graphviz documentation should be consulted for valid formats if svg is not required.

```
>>> schedule.dag(file_name="lovely", file_format="png")
```

Note: The dag method can be called from any node and will output the dag for that node and all of its children.

If we were to look at the dynamo eg6 example we would see the following image:



In the image, all PSyIR nodes with children are split into a start vertex and an end vertex (for example the InvokeSchedule node has both *schedule\_start* and *schedule\_end* vertices). Blue arrows indicate that there is a parent to child relationship (from a start node) or a child to parent relationship (to an end node). Green arrows indicate that a Node depends on another Node later in the schedule (which we call a forward dependence). Therefore the OMP parallel loop must complete before the globalsum is performed. Red arrows indicate that a Node depends on another Node that is earlier in the schedule (which we call a backward dependence). However the direction of the red arrows are reversed to improve the flow of the dag layout. In this example the forward and backward dependence is the same, however this is not always the case. The two built-ins do not depend on each other, so they have no associated green or red arrows.

The dependence graph output gives an indication of whether nodes can be moved within the InvokeSchedule. In this case it is valid to run the builtin's in either order. The underlying dependence analysis used to create this graph is used to determine whether a transformation of a Schedule is valid from the perspective of data dependencies.

6.2. API 31

# **TRANSFORMATIONS**

As discussed in the previous section, transformations can be applied to a schedule to modify it. Typically transformations will be used to optimise the PSy layer for a particular architecture, however transformations could be added for other reasons, such as to aid debugging or for performance monitoring.

# 7.1 Finding

Transformations can be imported directly, but the user needs to know what transformations are available. A helper class **TransInfo** is provided to show the available transformations

```
class psyclone.psyGen.TransInfo(module=None, base_class=None)
```

This class provides information about, and access, to the available transformations in this implementation of PSyclone. New transformations will be picked up automatically as long as they subclass the abstract Transformation class.

For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import TransInfo
>>> t = TransInfo()
>>> print(t.list)
There is 1 transformation available:
   1: SwapTrans, A test transformation
>>> # accessing a transformation by index
>>> trans = t.get_trans_num(1)
>>> # accessing a transformation by name
>>> trans = t.get_trans_name("SwapTrans")
```

#### get\_trans\_name (name)

return the transformation with this name (use list() first to see available transformations)

## get\_trans\_num(number)

return the transformation with this number (use list() first to see available transformations)

#### list

return a string with a human readable list of the available transformations

#### num\_trans

return the number of transformations available

# 7.2 Available

Most transformations are generic as the schedule structure is independent of the API, however it often makes sense to specialise these for a particular API by adding API-specific errors checks. Some transformations are API-specific (or specific to a set of APIs e.g. dynamo). Currently these different types of transformation are indicated by their names.

The generic transformations currently available are listed in alphabetical order below (a number of these have specialisations which can be found in the API-specific sections).

**Note:** PSyclone currently only supports OpenCL transformations for the GOcean 1.0 API and OpenACC transformations for the GOcean 1.0 and NEMO APIs. Attempts to apply these transformations to (members of) schedules from other APIs will be rejected.

#### class psyclone.transformations.ACCDataTrans

Add an OpenACC data region around a list of nodes in the PSyIR. COPYIN, COPYOUT and COPY clauses are added as required.

For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> api = "NEMO"
>>> filename = "tra_adv.F90"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse(filename, api=api)
>>> psy = PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)
>>>
>>> from psyclone.transformations import ACCDataTrans
>>> dtrans = ACCDataTrans()
>>>
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>> kernels = schedule.children[0].children[0].children[0:-1]
>>> # Enclose the kernels
>>> new_sched, _ = dtrans.apply(kernels)
```

## apply (node\_list)

Put the supplied list of nodes within an OpenACC data region.

**Parameters node\_list** (list of psyclone.psyGen.Node) - The list of PSyIR nodes to enclose in the data region.

**Returns** (transformed schedule, memento of transformation)

**Return type** 2-tuple of (psyclone.psyGen.Schedule, psyclone.undoredo. Memento).

#### class psyclone.transformations.ACCEnterDataTrans

Adds an OpenACC "enter data" directive to a Schedule. For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> api = "gocean1.0"
>>> filename = "nemolite2d_alg.f90"
```

(continues on next page)

```
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse(filename, api=api, invoke_name="invoke")
>>> psy = PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)
>>>
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import TransInfo
>>> t = TransInfo()
>>> dtrans = t.get_trans_name('ACCEnterDataTrans')
>>>
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>>
>>> # Add an enter-data directive
>>> newschedule, _ = dtrans.apply(schedule)
>>> newschedule.view()
```

### apply (sched)

Adds an OpenACC "enter data" directive to the invoke associated with the supplied Schedule. Any fields accessed by OpenACC kernels within this schedule will be added to this data region in order to ensure they remain on the target device.

**Parameters sched** (sub-class of psyclone.psyGen.Schedule.) – Schedule to which to add an "enter data" directive.

**Returns** Tuple of the modified schedule and a record of the transformation.

Return type (psyclone.psyGen.Schedule, psyclone.undoredo.Memento)

#### class psyclone.transformations.ACCKernelsTrans

Enclose a sub-set of nodes from a Schedule within an OpenACC kernels region (i.e. within "!\$acc kernels" ... "!\$acc end kernels" directives). Currently only supported for the NEMO API.

For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> api = "NEMO"
>>> filename = "tra_adv.F90"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse(filename, api=api)
>>> psy = PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)
>>>
>>> from psyclone.transformations import ACCKernelsTrans
>>> ktrans = ACCKernelsTrans()
>>>
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>> kernels = schedule.children[0].children[0].children[0:-1]
>>> # Transform the kernel
>>> new_sched, _ = ktrans.apply(kernels)
```

#### **apply** (node list, default present=False)

Enclose the supplied list of PSyIR nodes within an OpenACC Kernels region.

## **Parameters**

• node\_list (list of psyclone.psyGen.Node) - The list of nodes in the PSyIR to enclose.

7.2. Available 35

• **default\_present** (bool) – whether or not the kernels region should have the 'default present' attribute (indicating that data is already on the accelerator). When using managed memory this option should be False.

**Returns** (transformed schedule, memento of transformation)

**Return type** 2-tuple of (psyclone.psyGen.Schedule, psyclone.undoredo. Memento).

### class psyclone.transformations.ACCLoopTrans

Adds an OpenACC loop directive to a loop. This directive must be within the scope of some OpenACC Parallel region (at code-generation time).

For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.parse.utils import ParseError
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory, GenerationError
>>> api = "gocean1.0"
>>> filename = "nemolite2d_alg.f90"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse(filename, api=api, invoke_name="invoke")
>>> psy = PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import TransInfo
>>> t = TransInfo()
>>> ltrans = t.get_trans_name('ACCLoopTrans')
>>> rtrans = t.get_trans_name('ACCParallelTrans')
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>> new_schedule = schedule
>>>
# Apply the OpenACC Loop transformation to *every* loop
# in the schedule
>>> for child in schedule.children:
       newschedule, memento = ltrans.apply(child, reprod=True)
       schedule = newschedule
>>>
>>>
# Enclose all of these loops within a single OpenACC
# PARALLEL region
>>> rtrans.omp_schedule("dynamic,1")
>>> newschedule, memento = rtrans.apply(schedule.children)
>>>
```

### **apply** (node, collapse=None, independent=True, sequential=False)

Apply the ACCLoop transformation to the specified node in a GOInvokeSchedule. This node must be a Loop since this transformation corresponds to inserting a directive immediately before a loop, e.g.:

```
!$ACC LOOP

do ...
    ...
end do
```

At code-generation time (when psyclone.psyGen.ACCLoopDirective.gen\_code() is called), this node must be within (i.e. a child of) a PARALLEL region.

#### **Parameters**

- node (psyclone.psyGen.Loop.) the supplied node to which we will apply the Loop transformation.
- **collapse** (*int*) number of loops to collapse into single iteration space or None.
- **independent** (bool) whether to add the "independent" clause to the directive (not strictly necessary within PARALLEL regions).

**Returns** (psyclone.psyGen.GOInvokeSchedule, psyclone.undoredo. Memento)

#### class psyclone.transformations.ACCParallelTrans

Create an OpenACC parallel region by inserting directives. This parallel region *must* come after an enter-data directive (see *ACCEnterDataTrans*) or within a data region (see *ACCDataTrans*). For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> api = "gocean1.0"
>>> filename = "nemolite2d_alg.f90"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse(filename, api=api, invoke_name="invoke")
>>> psy = PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import TransInfo
>>> t = TransInfo()
>>> ptrans = t.get_trans_name('ACCParallelTrans')
>>> dtrans = t.get_trans_name('ACCDataTrans')
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>>
>>> # Enclose everything within a single OpenACC PARALLEL region
>>> newschedule, _ = ptrans.apply(schedule.children)
>>> # Add an enter-data directive
>>> newschedule, _ = dtrans.apply(newschedule)
>>> newschedule.view()
```

## apply (nodes)

Apply this transformation to a subset of the nodes within a schedule - i.e. enclose the specified Loops in the schedule within a single parallel region.

Parameters nodes ((list of) psyclone.psyGen.Node.) - a single Node or a list of Nodes.

**Raises** *TransformationError* – if the nodes argument is not of the correct type.

## class psyclone.transformations.ColourTrans

Apply a colouring transformation to a loop (in order to permit a subsequent parallelisation over colours). For example:

```
>>> invoke = ...
>>> schedule = invoke.schedule
>>>
>>> ctrans = ColourTrans()
>>>
>>> # Colour all of the loops
>>> for child in schedule.children:
>>> cschedule, _ = ctrans.apply(child)
```

(continues on next page)

7.2. Available 37

```
>>> csched.view()
```

#### apply (node)

Converts the Loop represented by node into a nested loop where the outer loop is over colours and the inner loop is over cells of that colour. :param node: The loop to transform. :type node: psyclone.psyGen.Loop:returns: Tuple of modified schedule and record of transformation:rtype: (psyclone.psyGen.Schedule, :py:class:`psyclone.undoredo.Memento)

## class psyclone.transformations.ExtractRegionTrans

Provides a transformation to extract code represented by a subset of the Nodes in the PSyIR of a Schedule into a stand-alone program. Examples are given in descriptions of children classes DynamoExtractRegionTrans and GOceanExtractRegionTrans.

After applying the transformation the Nodes marked for extraction are children of the ExtractNode. Nodes to extract can be individual constructs within an Invoke (e.g. Loops containing a Kernel or BuiltIn call) or entire Invokes. This functionality does not support distributed memory.

### apply (nodes)

Apply this transformation to a subset of the Nodes within a Schedule - i.e. enclose the specified Nodes in the Schedule within a single Extract region.

Parameters nodes ((list of) psyclone.psyGen.Node.) - a single Node or a list of Nodes.

**Returns** tuple of the modified Schedule and a record of the transformation.

Return type (psyclone.psyGen.Schedule, psyclone.undoredo.Memento).

**Raises** *TransformationError* – if the *nodes* argument is not of the correct type.

## class psyclone.transformations.KernelModuleInlineTrans

Switches on, or switches off, the inlining of a Kernel subroutine into the PSy layer module. For example:

```
>>> invoke = ...
>>> schedule = invoke.schedule
>>>
>>> inline_trans = KernelModuleInlineTrans()
>>>
>>> ischedule, _ = inline_trans.apply(schedule.children[0].children[0])
>>> ischedule.view()
```

**Warning:** For this transformation to work correctly, the Kernel subroutine must only use data that is passed in by argument, declared locally or included via use association within the subroutine. Two examples where in-lining will not work correctly are:

- 1. A variable is declared within the module that contains the Kernel subroutine and is then accessed within that Kernel:
- 2. A variable is included via use association at the module level and accessed within the Kernel subroutine

There are currently no checks that these rules are being followed when in-lining so the onus is on the user to ensure correctness.

#### apply (node, inline=True)

Checks that the node is of the correct type (a Kernel) then marks the Kernel to be inlined, or not, depending on the value of the inline argument. If the inline argument is not passed the Kernel is marked to be inlined.

Note: PSyclone does not currently permit module-inlining of transformed kernels (issue #229).

#### class psyclone.transformations.LoopFuseTrans

Provides a loop-fuse transformation. For example:

#### apply (node1, node2)

Fuse the loops represented by node1 and node2.

#### class psyclone.transformations.MoveTrans

Provides a transformation to move a node in the tree. For example:

Nodes may only be moved to a new location with the same parent and must not break any dependencies otherwise an exception is raised.

```
apply (node, location, position='before')
```

Move the node represented by node before location location (which is also a node) by default and after if the optional *position* argument is set to 'after'. An exception is raised if the move is invalid.

# class psyclone.transformations.OCLTrans

Switches on/off the generation of an OpenCL PSy layer for a given InvokeSchedule. For example:

7.2. Available 39

```
>>> invoke = ...
>>> schedule = invoke.schedule
>>>
>>> ocl_trans = OCLTrans()
>>> new_sched, _ = ocl_trans.apply(schedule)
```

#### apply (sched, opencl=True)

Apply the OpenCL transformation to the supplied GOInvokeSchedule. This causes PSyclone to generate an OpenCL version of the corresponding PSy-layer routine. The generated code makes use of the FortCL library (https://github.com/stfc/FortCL) in order to manage the OpenCL device directly from Fortran.

#### **Parameters**

- sched (psyclone.psyGen.GOInvokeSchedule) InvokeSchedule to transform.
- **opencl** (bool) whether or not to enable OpenCL generation.

**Note:** OpenCL support is still under development. See OpenCL for more details.

```
class psyclone.transformations.OMPLoopTrans(omp_schedule='static')
```

Adds an orphaned OpenMP directive to a loop. i.e. the directive must be inside the scope of some other OMP Parallel REGION. This condition is tested at code-generation time. The optional 'reprod' argument in the apply method decides whether standard OpenMP reduction support is to be used (which is not reproducible) or whether a manual reproducible reproduction is to be used.

**Parameters** omp\_schedule (str) - The OpenMP schedule to use.

For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.parse.utils import ParseError
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory, GenerationError
>>> api = "gocean1.0"
>>> filename = "nemolite2d_alg.f90"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse(filename, api=api, invoke_name="invoke")
>>> psy = PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)
>>> print psy.invokes.names
>>>
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import TransInfo
>>> t = TransInfo()
>>> ltrans = t.get_trans_name('OMPLoopTrans')
>>> rtrans = t.get_trans_name('OMPParallelTrans')
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>> new_schedule = schedule
# Apply the OpenMP Loop transformation to *every* loop
# in the schedule
>>> for child in schedule.children:
      newschedule, memento = ltrans.apply(child, reprod=True)
>>>
       schedule = newschedule
# Enclose all of these loops within a single OpenMP
# PARALLEL region
```

(continues on next page)

```
>>> rtrans.omp_schedule("dynamic,1")
>>> newschedule, memento = rtrans.apply(schedule.children)
>>>
>>>
```

#### apply (node, reprod=None)

Apply the OMPLoopTrans transformation to the specified node in a Schedule. This node must be a Loop since this transformation corresponds to wrapping the generated code with directives like so:

```
!$OMP DO

do ...
end do
!$OMP END DO
```

At code-generation time (when OMPLoopDirective.gen\_code() is called), this node must be within (i.e. a child of) an OpenMP PARALLEL region.

The optional reprod argument will cause a reproducible reduction to be generated if it is set to True, otherwise the default value (as read from the psyclone.cfg file) will be used. Note, reproducible in this case means obtaining the same results with the same number of OpenMP threads, not for different numbers of OpenMP threads.

#### **Parameters**

- node (psyclone.psyGen.Node) the supplied node to which we will apply the OMPLoopTrans transformation
- **reprod** (Boolean or None) optional argument to determine whether to generate reproducible OpenMP reductions (True) or not (False). The default value is None which will cause PSyclone to look up a default value

Returns (psyclone.psyGen.Schedule, psyclone.undoredo.Memento)

### omp\_schedule

Returns the OpenMP schedule that will be specified by this transformation. The default schedule is 'static'.

**class** psyclone.transformations.**OMPParallelLoopTrans** (*omp\_schedule='static'*) Adds an OpenMP PARALLEL DO directive to a loop.

For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse("dynamo.F90")
>>> psy = PSyFactory("dynamo0.1").create(invokeInfo)
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_v3_kernel_type').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>>
>>> from psyclone.transformations import OMPParallelLoopTrans
>>> trans = OMPParallelLoopTrans()
>>> new_schedule, memento = trans.apply(schedule.children[0])
>>> new_schedule.view()
```

## apply (node)

Apply an OMPParallelLoop Transformation to the supplied node (which must be a Loop). In the generated code this corresponds to wrapping the Loop with directives:

7.2. Available 41

```
!$OMP PARALLEL DO ...
do ...
end do
!$OMP END PARALLEL DO
```

Parameters node (psyclone.f2pygen.DoGen) — the node (loop) to which to apply the transformation.

**Returns** Two-tuple of transformed schedule and a record of the transformation.

```
Return type (psyclone.psyGen.Schedule, :py:class:`psyclone.undoredo.Memento)
```

## class psyclone.transformations.OMPParallelTrans

Create an OpenMP PARALLEL region by inserting directives. For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.parse.utils import ParseError
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory, GenerationError
>>> api = "gocean1.0"
>>> filename = "nemolite2d_alg.f90"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse(filename, api=api, invoke_name="invoke")
>>> psy = PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)
>>>
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import TransInfo
>>> t = TransInfo()
>>> ltrans = t.get_trans_name('GOceanOMPLoopTrans')
>>> rtrans = t.get_trans_name('OMPParallelTrans')
>>>
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>> new_schedule = schedule
>>>
>>> # Apply the OpenMP Loop transformation to *every* loop
>>> # in the schedule
>>> for child in schedule.children:
>>> newschedule, memento = ltrans.apply(child)
       schedule = newschedule
>>>
>>> # Enclose all of these loops within a single OpenMP
>>> # PARALLEL region
>>> newschedule, _ = rtrans.apply(schedule.children)
>>> newschedule.view()
```

#### apply (nodes)

Apply this transformation to a subset of the nodes within a schedule - i.e. enclose the specified Loops in the schedule within a single parallel region.

Parameters nodes ((list of) psyclone.psyGen.Node.) - a single Node or a list of Nodes.

Raises TransformationError – if the nodes argument is not of the correct type.

**Note:** PSyclone does not support (distributed-memory) halo swaps or global sums within OpenMP parallel regions. Attempting to create a parallel region for a set of nodes that includes halo swaps or global sums will produce an error.

In such cases it may be possible to re-order the nodes in the Schedule such that the halo swaps or global sums are performed outside the parallel region. The *MoveTrans* transformation may be used for this.

#### class psyclone.transformations.ProfileRegionTrans

Create a profile region around a list of statements. For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.parse.utils import ParseError
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory, GenerationError
>>> api = "gocean1.0"
>>> filename = "nemolite2d_alg.f90"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse(filename, api=api, invoke_name="invoke")
>>> psy = PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)
>>>
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import TransInfo
>>> t = TransInfo()
>>> p_trans = t.get_trans_name('ProfileRegionTrans')
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>>
>>> # Enclose all children within a single profile region
>>> newschedule, _ = p_trans.apply(schedule.children)
>>> newschedule.view()
```

### apply (nodes)

Apply this transformation to a subset of the nodes within a schedule - i.e. enclose the specified Nodes in the schedule within a single profiler region.

Parameters nodes (psyclone.psygen.Node or list of psyclone.psygen.Node.) — Can be a single node or a list of nodes.

# 7.3 Kernels

PSyclone supports the transformation of Kernels as well as PSy-layer code. However, the transformation of kernels to produce new kernels brings with it additional considerations, especially regarding the naming of the resulting kernels. PSyclone supports two use cases:

- 1. the HPC expert wishes to optimise the same kernel in different ways, depending on where/how it is called;
- 2. the HPC expert wishes to transform the kernel just once and have the new version used throughout the Algorithm file.

The second case is really an optimisation of the first for the case where the same set of transformations is applied to every instance of a given kernel.

Since PSyclone is run separately for each Algorithm in a given application, ensuring that there are no name clashes for kernels in the application as a whole requires that some state is maintained between PSyclone invocations. This is achieved by requiring that the same kernel output directory is used for every invocation of PSyclone when building a given application. However, this is under the control of the user and therefore it is possible to use the same output directory for a subset of algorithms that require the same kernel transformation and then a different directory for another subset requiring a different transformation. Of course, such use would require care when building and linking the application since the differently-optimised kernels would have the same names.

7.3. Kernels 43

By default, transformed kernels are written to the current working directory. Alternatively, the user may specify the location to which to write the modified code via the -okern command-line flag.

In order to support the two use cases given above, PSyclone supports two different kernel-renaming schemes: "multiple" and "single" (specified via the <code>--kernel-renaming</code> command-line flag). In the default, "multiple" scheme, PSyclone ensures that each transformed kernel is given a unique name (with reference to the contents of the kernel output directory). In the "single" scheme, it is assumed that any given kernel that is transformed is always transformed in the same way (or left unchanged) and thus just one transformed version of it is created. This assumption is checked by examining the Fortran code for any pre-existing transformed version of that kernel. If another transformed version of that kernel exists and does not match that created by the current transformation then PSyclone will raise an exception.

## **7.3.1 Rules**

Kernel code that is to be transformed is subject to certain restrictions. These rules are intended to make kernel transformations as robust as possible, in particular by limiting the amount of code that must be parsed by PSyclone (via fparser). The rules are as follows:

- 1) Any variable or procedure accessed by a kernel must either be explicitly declared or named in the only clause of a module use statement within the scope of the subroutine containing the kernel implementation. This means that:
  - 1) Kernel subroutines are forbidden from accessing data using COMMON blocks;
  - 2) Kernel subroutines are forbidden from calling proceduces declared via the EXTERN statement;
  - 3) Kernel subroutines must not access data or procedures made available via their parent (containing) module.
- 2) The full Fortran source of a kernel must be available to PSyclone. This includes the source of any modules from which it accesses either routines or data. (However, kernel routines are permitted to make use of Fortran intrinsic routines.)

For instance, consider the following Fortran module containing the bc\_ssh\_code kernel:

Since the kernel subroutine accesses data (the rdt variable) from the model\_mod module, the source of that module must be available to PSyclone if a transformation is applied to this kernel. Should rdt not actually be defined in model\_mod (i.e. model\_mod itself imports it from another module) then the source containing its definition must also be available to PSyclone. Note that the rules forbid the bc\_ssh\_code kernel from accessing the forbidden\_var variable that is available to it from the enclosing module scope.

**Note:** these rules *only* apply to kernels that are the target of PSyclone kernel transformations.

### 7.3.2 Available Kernel Transformations

PSyclone currently provides just one kernel transformation:

class psyclone.transformations.ACCRoutineTrans

Transform a kernel subroutine by adding a "!\$acc routine" directive (causing it to be compiled for the OpenACC accelerator device). For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> api = "gocean1.0"
>>> filename = "nemolite2d_alg.f90"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse(filename, api=api)
>>> psy = PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)
>>>
>>> from psyclone.transformations import ACCRoutineTrans
>>> rtrans = ACCRoutineTrans()
>>>
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>> kern = schedule.children[0].children[0].children[0]
>>> # Transform the kernel
>>> newkern, _ = rtrans.apply(kern)
```

## apply (kern)

Modifies the AST of the supplied kernel so that it contains an '!\$acc routine' OpenACC directive.

Parameters kern (psyclone.psyGen.Call) - The kernel object to transform.

**Returns** (transformed kernel, memento of transformation)

Return type 2-tuple of (psyclone.psyGen.Kern, psyclone.undoredo.Memento).

**Raises** *TransformationError* – if we fail to find the subroutine corresponding to the kernel object.

#### name

**Returns** the name of this transformation class.

Return type str

### validate(kern)

Perform checks that the supplied kernel can be transformed.

Parameters kern (psyclone.psyGen.Call) – the kernel which is the target of the transformation.

**Raises** *TransformationError* – if the target kernel is a built-in.

Note: PSyclone does not currently permit transformed kernels to be module-inlined. (Issue #229.)

7.3. Kernels 45

# 7.4 Applying

Transformations can be applied either interactively or through a script.

## 7.4.1 Interactive

To apply a transformation interactively we first parse and analyse the code. This allows us to generate a "vanilla" PSy layer. For example . . .

```
from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory

# This example uses version 0.1 of the Dynamo API
api = "dynamo0.1"

# Parse the file containing the algorithm specification and
# return the Abstract Syntax Tree and invokeInfo objects
ast, invokeInfo = parse("dynamo.F90", api=api)

# Create the PSy-layer object using the invokeInfo
psy = PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)

# Optionally generate the vanilla PSy layer fortran
print psy.gen
```

We then extract the particular schedule we are interested in. For example ...

```
# List the various invokes that the PSy layer contains
print psy.invokes.names

# Get the required invoke
invoke = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0_v3_kernel_type')

# Get the schedule associated with the required invoke
schedule = invoke.schedule
schedule.view()
```

Now we have the schedule we can create and apply a transformation to it to create a new schedule and then replace the original schedule with the new one. For example . . .

```
# Get the list of possible loop transformations
from psyclone.psyGen import TransInfo
t = TransInfo()
print t.list

# Create an OpenMPLoop-transformation
ol = t.get_trans_name('OMPParallelLoopTrans')

# Apply it to the loop schedule of the selected invoke
new_schedule,memento = ol.apply(schedule.children[0])
new_schedule.view()

# Replace the original loop schedule of the selected invoke
# with the new, transformed schedule
invoke.schedule=new_schedule
```

(continues on next page)

```
# Generate the Fortran code for the new PSy layer print psy.gen
```

More examples of use of the interactive application of transformations can be found in the runme\*.py files within the examples/dynamo/eg1 and examples/dynamo/eg2 directories. Some simple examples of the use of transformations are also given in the previous section.

# 7.4.2 Script

PSyclone provides a Python script (**psyclone**) that can be used from the command line to generate PSy layer code and to modify algorithm layer code appropriately. By default this script will generate "vanilla" (unoptimised) PSy layer code. For example:

```
> psyclone algspec.f90
> psyclone -oalg alg.f90 -opsy psy.f90 -api dynamo0.3 algspec.f90
```

The **psyclone** script has an optional **-s** flag which allows the user to specify a script file to modify the PSy layer as required. Script files may be specified without a path. For example:

```
> psyclone -s opt.py algspec.f90
```

In this case the Python search path **PYTHONPATH** will be used to try to find the script file.

Alternatively, script files may be specified with a path. In this case the file is expected to be found in the specified location. For example . . .

```
> psyclone -s ./opt.py algspec.f90
> psyclone -s ../scripts/opt.py algspec.f90
> psyclone -s /home/me/PSyclone/scripts/opt.py algspec.f90
```

PSyclone also provides the same functionality via a function (which is what the **psyclone** script calls internally).

Takes a PSyclone algorithm specification as input and outputs the associated generated algorithm and psy codes suitable for compiling with the specified kernel(s) and support infrastructure. Uses the parse.algorithm.parse() function to parse the algorithm specification, the psyGen.PSy class to generate the PSy code and the alg\_gen.Alg class to generate the modified algorithm code.

## Parameters

- **filename** (*str*) The file containing the algorithm specification.
- **kernel\_path** (*str*) The directory from which to recursively search for the files containing the kernel source (if different from the location of the algorithm specification).
- **script\_name** (*str*) A script file that can apply optimisations to the PSy layer (can be a path to a file or a filename that relies on the PYTHONPATH to find the module).
- line\_length (bool) A logical flag specifying whether we care about line lengths being longer than 132 characters. If so, the input (algorithm and kernel) code is checked to make sure that it conforms. The default is False.
- **distributed\_memory** (bool) A logical flag specifying whether to generate distributed memory code. The default is set in the config.py file.
- **kern\_out\_path** (*str*) Directory to which to write transformed kernel code.

7.4. Applying 47

• **kern\_naming** (bool) – the scheme to use when re-naming transformed kernels.

**Returns** 2-tuple containing fparser1 ASTs for the algorithm code and the psy code.

```
Return type (fparser.one.block_statements.BeginSource, block_statements.Module) fparser.one.
```

#### **Raises**

- IOError if the filename or search path do not exist
- GenerationError if an invalid API is specified.
- **GenerationError** if an invalid kernel-renaming scheme is specified.

For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.generator import generate
>>> alg, psy = generate("algspec.f90")
>>> alg, psy = generate("algspec.f90", kernel_path="src/kernels")
>>> alg, psy = generate("algspec.f90", script_name="optimise.py")
>>> alg, psy = generate("algspec.f90", line_length=True)
>>> alg, psy = generate("algspec.f90", distributed_memory=False)
```

A valid script file must contain a **trans** function which accepts a **PSy** object as an argument and returns a **PSy** object, i.e.:

```
def trans(psy)
    ...
    return psy
```

It is up to the script what it does with the PSy object. The example below does the same thing as the example in the *Interactive* section.

```
def trans(psy):
    from psyclone.transformations import OMPParallelLoopTrans
    invoke = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0_v3_kernel_type')
    schedule = invoke.schedule
    ol = OMPParallelLoopTrans()
    new_schedule, _ = ol.apply(schedule.children[0])
    invoke.schedule = new_schedule
    return psy
```

Of course the script may apply as many transformations as is required for a particular schedule and may apply transformations to all the schedules (i.e. invokes) contained within the PSy layer.

Examples of the use of transformation scripts can be found in the examples/dynamo/eg3 and examples/dynamo/scripts directories. Please read the examples/dynamo/README file first as it explains how to run the examples (and see also the examples/check\_examples script).

# 7.5 OpenMP

OpenMP is added to a code by using transformations. The three transformations currently supported allow the addition of an **OpenMP Parallel** directive, an **OpenMP Do** directive and an **OpenMP Parallel Do** directive, respectively, to a code.

The generic versions of these three transformations (i.e. ones that theoretically work for all APIs) were given in the *Available* section. The API-specific versions of these transformations are described in the API-specific sections of this document.

## 7.5.1 Reductions

PSyclone supports parallel scalar reductions. If a scalar reduction is specified in the Kernel metadata (see the API-specific sections for details) then PSyclone ensures the appropriate reduction is performed.

In the case of distributed memory, PSyclone will add **GlobalSum's** at the appropriate locations. As can be inferred by the name, only "summation" reductions are currently supported for distributed memory.

In the case of an OpenMP parallel loop the standard reduction support will be used by default. For example

```
!$omp parallel do, reduction(+:x)
!loop
!$omp end parallel do
```

OpenMP reductions do not guarantee to give bit reproducible results for different runs of the same problem even if the same problem is run using the same resources. The reason for this is that the order in which data is reduced is not mandated.

Therefore, an additional **reprod** option has been added to the **OpenMP Do** transformation. If the reprod option is set to "True" then the OpenMP reduction support is replaced with local per-thread reductions which are reduced serially after the loop has finished. This implementation guarantees to give bit-wise reproducible results for different runs of the same problem using the same resources, but will not bit-wise compare if the code is rerun with different numbers of OpenMP threads.

## 7.5.2 Restrictions

If two reductions are used within an OpenMP region and the same variable is used for both reductions then PSyclone will raise an exception. In this case the solution is to use a different variable for each reduction.

PSyclone does not support (distributed-memory) halo swaps or global sums within OpenMP parallel regions. Attempting to create a parallel region for a set of nodes that includes halo swaps or global sums will produce an error. In such cases it may be possible to re-order the nodes in the Schedule using the *MoveTrans* transformation.

# 7.6 OpenCL

In common with OpenMP, the conversion of the generated code to use OpenCL is performed by a transformation (OCLTrans - see the *Available* Section above). Currently this transformation is only supported for the GOcean1.0 API and is applied to the whole InvokeSchedule of an Invoke. This means that all kernels in that Invoke will be executed on the OpenCL device. At present the OCLTrans transformation only alters the generated PSy-layer code. It is currently the user's responsibility to convert the actual kernel code from Fortran into OpenCL. Work is underway to extend PSyclone in order to perform this translation automatically.

The OpenCL code generated by PSyclone is still Fortran and makes use of the FortCL library (https://github.com/stfc/FortCL) to access OpenCL functionality. It also relies upon the OpenCL support provided by the dl\_esm\_inf library (https://github.com/stfc/dl\_esm\_inf).

The introduction of OpenCL code generation in PSyclone has been largely motivated by the need to target Field Programmable Gate Array (FPGA) accelerator devices. It is not currently designed to target the other compute devices that OpenCL supports (such as GPUs and multi-core CPUs) but this is a potentially fruitful area for future work.

7.6. OpenCL 49

# 7.7 OpenACC

PSyclone supports the generation of code targetting GPUs through the addition of OpenACC directives. This is achieved by a user applying various OpenACC transformations to the PSyIR before the final Fortran code is generated. The steps to parallelisation are very similar to those in OpenMP with the added complexity of managing the movement of data to and from the GPU device. For the latter task PSyclone provides the ACCDataTrans and ACCEnterDataTrans transformations, as described in the *Available* Section above. These two transformations add statically- and dynamically-scoped data regions, respectively. The former manages what data is on the remote device for a specific section of code while the latter allows run-time control of data movement. This second option is essential for minimising data movement as, without it, PSyclone-generated code would move data to and from the device upon every entry/exit of an Invoke. The first option is mainly provided as an aid to incremental porting and/or debugging of an OpenACC application as it provides explicit control over what data is present on a device for a given (part of an) Invoke routine.

The PGI compiler provides an alternative approach to controlling data movement through its 'unified memory' option (-ta=tesla:managed). When this is enabled the compiler itself takes on the task of ensuring that data is copied to/from the GPU when required. (Note that this approach can struggle with Fortran code containing derived types however.)

As well as ensuring the correct data is copied to and from the remote device, OpenACC directives must also be added to a code in order to tell the compiler how it should be parallelised. PSyclone provides the ACCKernelsTrans, ACCParallelTrans and ACCLoopTrans transformations for this purpose. The simplest of these is ACCKernelsTrans (currently only supported for the NEMO API) which encloses the code represented by a sub-tree of the PSyIR within an OpenACC kernels region. This essentially gives free-reign to the compiler to automatically parallelise any suitable loops within the specified region. An example of the use of ACCDataTrans and ACCKernelsTrans may be found in PSyclone/examples/nemo/eg3.

However, as with any "automatic" approach, a more performant solution can almost always be obtained by providing the compiler with more explicit direction on how to parallelise the code. The ACCParallelTrans and ACCLoopTrans transformations allow the user to define thread-parallel regions and, within those, define which loops should be parallelised. (Note that these two transformations are currently only supported for the GOcean1.0 and NEMO APIs.) For an example of their use please see PSyclone/examples/gocean/eg2.

In order for a given section of code to be executed on a GPU, any routines called from within that section must also have been compiled for the GPU. This then requires either that any such routines are in-lined or that the OpenACC routine directive be added to any such routines. This situation will occur routinely in those PSyclone APIs that use the PSyKAl separation of concerns since the user-supplied kernel routines are called from within PSyclone-generated loops in the PSy layer. PSyclone therefore provides the ACCRoutineTrans transformation which, given a Kernel node in the PSyIR, creates a new version of that kernel with the routine directive added. Again, please see PSyclone/examples/gocean/eg2 for an example.

**CHAPTER** 

**EIGHT** 

# DISTRIBUTED MEMORY

PSyclone supports the generation of code for distributed memory machines. When this option is switched on, PSyclone takes on responsibility for both performance and correctness, as described below.

# 8.1 Correctness

PSyclone is responsible for adding appropriate distributed memory communication calls to the PSy layer to ensure that the distributed memory code runs correctly. For example, a stencil operation will require halo exchanges between the different processes.

The burden of correctly placing distributed memory communication calls has traditionally been born by the user. However, PSyclone is able to determine the placing of these within the PSy-layer, thereby freeing the user from this responsibility. Thus, the Algorithm and Kernel code remain the same, irrespective of whether the target architecture does or does not require a distributed memory solution.

## 8.2 Performance

PSyclone adds **HaloExchange** and **GlobalSum** objects to the generated PSyIR **InvokeSchedule** at the required locations. The halo-exchange and global-sum objects are exposed here for the purposes of optimisation. For example the halo-exchange and/or global-sum objects may be moved in the schedule (via appropriate transformations) to enable overlap of computation with communication.

Note: When these optimisations are implemented, add a reference to the *Transformations* Section.

A halo exchange is required with distributed memory when a processor requires data from its halo and the halo information is out of date. One example is where a field is written to and then read using a stencil access. Halo exchanges have performance implications so should only be used where necessary.

A global sum is required with distributed memory when a scalar is written to. Global sums can have performance implications so should only be used where necessary. Global sums currently only occur in certain Built-in kernels. The description of Built-ins indicates when this is the case.

# 8.3 Implementation

Within the contents of an invoke () call, PSyclone is able to statically determine which communication calls are required and where they should be placed. However, PSyclone has no information on what happens outside invoke () calls and thus is unable to statically determine whether communication is required between these calls. The solution

we use is to add run-time flags in the PSy layer to keep track of whether data has been written to and read from. These flags are then used to determine whether communication calls are required upon entry to an invoke().

## 8.4 Control

Support for distributed memory can be switched on or off with the default being on. The default can be changed permanently by modifying the DISTRIBUTED\_MEMORY variable in the psyclone.cfg configuration file to false (see *Configuration*).

Distributed memory can be switched on or off from the psyclone script using the -dm/--dist\_mem or -nodm/--no\_dist\_mem flags, respectively.

For interactive access, the distributed memory option can be changed interactively from the PSyFactory class by setting the optional distributed\_memory flag; for example:

```
psy = PSyFactory(api=api, distributed_memory=False)
```

Similarly the distributed memory option can be changed interactively from the generate function by setting the optional distributed\_memory flag, e.g.:

```
psy, alg = generate("file.f90", distributed_memory=False).
```

# 8.5 Status

Distributed memory support is currently limited to the dynamo0.3 API. The remaining APIs ignore the distributed memory flag and continue to produce code without any distributed memory functionality, irrespective of its value.

**CHAPTER** 

NINE

# **BUILT-INS**

Built-ins (named by analogy with the native functionality provided by Python) are operations which can be specified within an invoke call in the algorithm layer but do not require an associated kernel to be implemented as they are provided directly by the infrastructure.

One use of Built-ins is for commonly used operations. In this case Built-ins simplify the use of the system as users do not need to write kernel routines. Built-ins also offer a potential performance advantage as they provide a specification of what is required without an implementation. Therefore the PSy layer is free to implement these operations in whatever way it chooses.

**Note:** In general, PSyclone will need to know the types of the arguments being passed to any Built-ins. The parser obtains this information from an API-specific file that contains the metadata for all Built-in operations supported for that API.

# 9.1 Example

In the following example, the invoke call includes a call to a Built-in (setval\_c) and a user-supplied kernel (matrix\_vector\_kernel\_mm\_type). The Built-in sets all values in the field Ax to 0.0. Notice that, unlike the kernel call, no use association is required for the Built-in since it is provided as part of the environment (c.f. Fortran intrinsics such as sin()).

```
subroutine jacobi_solver_algorithm(lhs, rhs, mm, mesh, n_iter)
 use matrix_vector_mm_mod, only: matrix_vector_kernel_mm_type
 integer,
                      intent(in)
                                    :: n_iter
 type(field_type), intent(inout) :: lhs, rhs
 type(operator_type), intent(inout) :: mm
                   intent(in)
 type (mesh_type) ,
                                  :: mesh
                                    :: Ax, lumped_weight, res
 type(field_type)
 real(kind=r_def), parameter :: MU = 0.9_r_def
 do iter = 1,n_iter
   call invoke( setval_c(Ax, 0.0) )
    call invoke( matrix_vector_kernel_mm_type(Ax,lhs,mm) )
 end do
end subroutine jacobi_solver_algorithm
```

Below is an example of a kernel that is consistent with the matrix\_vector\_kernel\_mm\_type kernel specified in the example above.

```
module matrix_vector_mm_mod
 type, public, extends(kernel_type) :: matrix_vector_kernel_mm_type
   private
   type(arg_type) :: meta_args(3) = (/
        arg_type(GH_FIELD, GH_INC, ANY_SPACE_1),
                                                                         &
        arg_type(GH_FIELD,
                             GH_READ, ANY_SPACE_1),
        arg_type(GH_OPERATOR, GH_READ, ANY_SPACE_1, ANY_SPACE_1)
   integer :: iterates_over = CELLS
 contains
   procedure, nopass ::matrix_vector_mm_code
 end type
contains
 subroutine matrix_vector_mm_code(cell,
                                   nlayers,
                                   lhs, x,
                                   ncell_3d,
                                   mass_matrix, &
                                   ndf, undf, map)
 end subroutine matrix_vector_mm_code
end module matrix_vector_mm_mod
```

We now translate the algorithm layer code and generate the psy layer code. The algorithm code is assumed to be in a file call *solver\_mod.x90*. In this case we use the top level python interface. See the *API* section for different ways to translate/generate code.

```
>>> from psyclone.generator import generate
>>> alg, psy = generate("solver_mod.x90")
>>> print alg
>>> print psy
```

The resultant generated algorithm code is given below.

Ignoring the difference in case (which is due to the output format of the code parser) the differences between the original algorithm code and the translated algorithm code are:

- the generic calls to invoke have been replaced by specific CALL invoke\_xx. The calls within the invoke are removed, as are duplicate arguments and any literals leaving the three fields being passed in.
- a use statement is added for the each of the new CALL invoke\_xx which will call the generated PSy layer code.

The existance of a call to a Built-in has made no difference at this point:

```
SUBROUTINE jacobi_solver_algorithm(lhs, rhs, mm, mesh, n_iter)
USE solver_mod_psy, ONLY: invoke_5_matrix_vector_kernel_mm_type
USE solver_mod_psy, ONLY: invoke_4
INTEGER, intent(in) :: n_iter
TYPE(field_type), intent(inout) :: lhs, rhs
TYPE(operator_type), intent(inout) :: mm
TYPE(mesh_type), intent(in) :: mesh
TYPE(field_type) ax, lumped_weight, res

REAL(KIND=r_def), parameter :: mu = 0.9_r_def

INTEGER iter
```

(continues on next page)

```
INTEGER rhs_fs
TYPE(function_space_type) fs
...
DO iter = 1,n_iter
    CALL invoke_4(ax)
    CALL invoke_5_matrix_vector_kernel_mm_type(ax, lhs, mm)
    ...
    END DO
END SUBROUTINE jacobi_solver_algorithm
```

A vanilla (not optimised) version of the generated PSy layer is given below. As expected the kernel code is called from the PSy layer. However, in the case of the  $setval\_c$  Built-in, the code for this has been written directly into the PSy layer (the loop setting  $ax\_proxy\%data(df) = 0.0$ ). This example illustrates that Built-ins may be implemented in whatever way the generator sees fit with no change to the algorithm and kernel layers.

```
MODULE solver_mod_psy
 SUBROUTINE invoke 4(ax)
   USE mesh_mod, ONLY: mesh_type
   TYPE(field_type), intent(inout) :: ax
   INTEGER df
   INTEGER undf_any_space_1
   TYPE (field_proxy_type) ax_proxy
    ! Initialise field proxies
   ax_proxy = ax%get_proxy()
    ! Initialise sizes and allocate any basis arrays for any_space_1
   undf_any_space_1 = ax_proxy%vspace%get_undf()
    ! Call our kernels
   DO df=1, undf_any_space_1
     ax_proxy%data(df) = 0.0
   END DO
    1
 END SUBROUTINE invoke_4
 SUBROUTINE invoke_5_matrix_vector_kernel_mm_type(ax, lhs, mm)
   USE matrix_vector_mm_mod, ONLY: matrix_vector_mm_code
   TYPE (field_type), intent (inout) :: ax, lhs
   TYPE(operator_type), intent(inout) :: mm
    ! Initialise field proxies
   ax_proxy = ax%get_proxy()
   lhs_proxy = lhs%get_proxy()
   mm_proxy = mm%get_proxy()
    ! Initialise number of layers
```

(continues on next page)

9.1. Example 55

This example is distributed with PSyclone and can be found in <PSYCLONEHOME>/examples/dynamo/eg4.

# 9.2 Supported Built-in operations

The list of supported Built-ins is API-specific and therefore is described under the documentation of each API.

# 9.3 Adding new additional Built-in operations

- 1. Identify the PSyclone source file for the API to be extended. *e.g.* for dynamo0.3 it is src/dynamo0p3\_builtins.py.
- 2. Edit this source file to create the class for this new call. It must inherit from the API-specific parent class for Built-in operations (DynBuiltInKern for dynamo0.3).
- 3. Implement \_\_str\_\_ and gen\_code () methods for this new class.
- 4. Add the name of the new Built-in operation and its corresponding class to the BUILTIN\_MAP dictionary in that source file.
- 5. Add metadata describing this call to the appropriate file specified in the BUILTIN\_DEFINITIONS\_FILE in that source file. For dynamo0.3 this is dynamo0p3\_builtins\_mod.f90.
- 6. Add relevant tests to the PSyclone test file for the API to be extended. *e.g.* for dynamo0.3 it is src/tests/dynamo0p3\_builtins\_test.py. The tests rely on single\_invoke Fortran examples in the relevant src/tests/test\_files/ subfolder.

56 Chapter 9. Built-ins

- 7. Add an appropriate Fortran single\_invoke example for the new Built-in in the relevant src/tests/test\_files/ subfolder. e.g. for dynamo0.3 it is src/tests/test\_files/dynamo0p3/. Names of examples follow the template <category.number>.<subcategory.number>.<subcategory.number> is 15.
- 8. Document the new Built-in in the documentation of the relevant API (e.g. doc/dynamo0p3.rst).

If the API being extended does not currently support any Built-ins then the <code>BUILTIN\_MAP</code> and <code>BUILTIN\_DEFINITIONS\_FILE</code> module variables must be added to the source file for the API. A Fortran module file must be created in the PSyclone src directory (with the name specified in <code>BUILTIN\_DEFINITIONS\_FILE</code>) containing metadata describing the Built-in operations. Finally, <code>parse.get\_builtin\_defs()</code> must be extended to import <code>BUILTIN\_MAP</code> and <code>BUILTIN\_DEFINITIONS\_FILE</code> for this API.

58 Chapter 9. Built-ins

**CHAPTER** 

**TEN** 

# DYNAMO0.3 API

This section describes the Dynamo0.3 application programming interface (API). This API explains what a user needs to write in order to make use of the Dynamo0.3 API in PSyclone.

As with the majority of PSyclone APIs, the Dynamo0.3 API specifies how a user needs to write the algorithm layer and the kernel layer to allow PSyclone to generate the PSy layer. These algorithm and kernel APIs are discussed separately in the following sections.

The Dynamo0.3 API supports the Met Office's finite element (hereafter FEM) based GungHo dynamical core (see *Introduction*). The Met Office Collaboration Wiki (login required) provides more detailed information about the dynamical core's formulation and data model.

# 10.1 Algorithm

The general requirements for the structure of an Algorithm are explained in the *Algorithm layer* section. This section explains the Dynamo0.3-specific specialisations and extensions.

# **10.1.1 Example**

An example Dynamo0.3 API invoke call is given below with various different types of objects supported by the API. These different objects and their use are discussed in the following sections.

```
real(kind=r_def)
                               :: scalar1
integer(kind=i_def)
                               :: stencil_extent
type(field_type)
                               :: field1, field2, field3
                               :: field5(3), field6(3)
type(field_type)
type (quadrature_type)
type(operator_type)
                               :: operator1
type(columnwise_operator_type) :: cma_op1
call invoke( kernel1(field1, field2, operator1, qr),
             builtin1(scalar1, field2, field3),
             kernel2(field1, stencil_extent, field3, scalar1), &
             assembly_kernel(cma_op1, operator1),
             name="some_calculation"
                                                                 δε
call invoke( prolong_kernel_type(field1, field4),
                                                                 S.
             restrict_kernel_type(field5, field6)
           )
```

Please see the Algorithm layer section for a description of the name argument.

Objects in the Dynamo0.3 API can be categorised by their functionality as data types and information that specifies supported operations on a particular data type. The above example introduces four of five data types supported by the Dynamo0.3 API: field, scalar, operator and column-wise operator (field vector is the fifth). qr represents a quadrature object which provides information required by a kernel to operate on fields (see section *Quadrature* for more details).

## 10.1.2 Field

Dynamo0.3 API fields, identified with GH\_FIELD metadata, represent FEM discretisations of various dynamical core prognostic and diagnostic variables. In FEM, variables are discretised by placing them into a function space (see *Supported Function Spaces*) from which they inherit a polynomial expansion via the basis functions of that space. Field values at points within a cell are evaluated as the sum of a set of basis functions multiplied by coefficients which are the data points. Points of evaluation are determined by a quadrature object (*Quadrature*) and are independent of the function space the field is on. Placement of field data points, also called degrees of freedom ("dof"), is determined by the function space the field is on.

## 10.1.3 Field Vector

Depending on the function space a field lives on, the field data at a point can be a scalar or a vector (see *Supported Function Spaces*) for the list of scalar and vector function spaces). There is an additional option which specifies whether the data itself is vector valued and it usually refers to bundles of scalar valued fields. Field vectors are represented as  $GH_FIELD*N$  where N is the size of the vector. The 3D coordinate field, for example, has (x, y, z) scalar values at the nodes and therefore has a vector size of 3.

## 10.1.4 Scalar

In Dynamo 0.3 API a scalar is a single value variable that can be either real or integer. Real scalars are identified with GH\_REAL and integer scalars are identified with GH\_INTEGER metadata.

# 10.1.5 Operator

Represents a matrix constructed on a per-cell basis using Local Matrix Assembly (LMA) and is identified with GH\_OPERATOR metadata.

# 10.1.6 Column-Wise Operator

The Dynamo 0.3 API has support for the construction and use of column-wise/Column Matrix Assembly (CMA) operators whose metadata identifier is GH\_COLUMNWISE\_OPERATOR. As the name suggests, these are operators constructed for a whole column of the mesh. These are themselves constructed from the Local Matrix Assembly (LMA) operators of each cell in the column. The rules governing Kernels that have CMA operators as arguments are given in the *Kernel* section below.

There are three recognised Kernel types involving CMA operations; construction, application (including inverse application) and matrix-matrix. The following example sketches-out what the use of such kernels might look like in the Algorithm layer:

```
use field_mod, only: field_type
use operator_mod, only : operator_type, columnwise_operator_type
type(field_type) :: field1, field2, field3
type(operator_type) :: lma_op1, lma_op2
type(columnwise_operator_type) :: cma_op1, cma_op2, cma_op3
```

(continues on next page)

The above invoke uses two LMA operators to construct the CMA operator cma\_op1. A second CMA operator, cma\_op2, is assembled from the same two LMA operators but also uses a field. The first of these CMA operators is then applied to field2 and the result stored in field1 (assuming that the metadata for apply\_kernel specifies that it is the first field argument that is written to). The two CMA operators are then combined to produce a third, cma\_op3. This is then applied to field1 and the result stored in field3.

Note that PSyclone identifies the type of kernels performing Column-Wise operations based on their arguments as described in metadata (see *Rules for Kernels that work with CMA Operators* below). The names of the kernels in the above example are purely illustrative and are not used by PSyclone when determining kernel type.

A full example of CMA operator construction is available in examples/dynamo/eg7.

## 10.1.7 Quadrature

Kernels conforming to the Dynamo 0.3 API may require quadrature information (specified using e.g.  $gh\_shape = gh\_quadrature\_XYoZ$  in the kernel metadata - see Section  $gh\_shape$  and  $gh\_evaluator\_targets$ ). This information must be passed to the kernel from the Algorithm layer in the form of a  $quadrature\_type$  object. This must be the last argument passed to the kernel, e.g.:

This quadrature object specifies the set of points at which the basis/differential-basis functions required by the kernel are to be evaluated.

# 10.1.8 Stencils

Kernel metadata may specify that a Kernel performs a stencil operation on a field. Any such metadata must provide a stencil type. See the *meta\_args* section for more details. The supported stencil types are X1D, Y1D, XORY1D or CROSS.

If a stencil operation is specified by the Kernel metadata the algorithm layer must provide the extent of the stencil (the maximum distance from the central cell that the stencil extends). The Dynamo0.3 API expects this information to be added as an additional integer argument immediately after the relevant field when specifying the Kernel via an invoke.

For example:

```
integer :: extent = 2
call invoke(kernel(field1, field2, extent))
```

10.1. Algorithm 61

where field2 has kernel metadata specifying that it has a stencil access.

extent may also be passed as a literal. For example:

```
call invoke(kernel(field1, field2, 2))
```

where, again, field2 has kernel metadata specifying that it has a stencil access.

**Note:** The stencil extent specified in the Algorithm layer is not the same as the stencil size passed in to the Kernel. The latter contains the number of cells in the stencil which is dependent on both the stencil type and extent.

If the Kernel metadata specifies that the stencil is of type XORY1D (which means X1D or Y1D) then the algorithm layer must specify whether the stencil is X1D or Y1D for that particular kernel call. The Dynamo0.3 API expects this information to be added as an additional argument immediately after the relevant stencil extent argument. The argument should be an integer with valid values being x\_direction or y\_direction, both being supplied by the LFRic infrastructure via the flux direction mod fortran module

For example:

```
use flux_direction_mod, only : x_direction
integer :: direction = x_direction
integer :: extent = 2
! ...
call invoke(kernel(field1, field2, extent, direction))
```

direction may also be passed as a literal. For example:

```
use flux_direction_mod, only : x_direction
integer :: extent = 2
! ...
call invoke(kernel(field1, field2, extent, x_direction))
```

If certain fields use the same value of extent and/or direction then the same variable, or literal value can be provided.

For example:

```
call invoke(kernel1(field1, field2, extent, field3, extent, direction), & kernel2(field1, field2, extent2, field4, extent, direction))
```

In the above example field2 and field3 in kernel1 and field4 in kernel2 will have the same extent value but field2 in kernel2 may have a different value. Similarly, field3 in kernel1 and field4 in kernel2 will have the same direction value.

An example of the use of stencils is available in examples/dynamo/eg5.

There is currently no attempt to perform type checking in PSyclone so any errors in the type and/or position of arguments will not be picked up until compile time. However, PSyclone does check for the correct number of algorithm arguments. If the wrong number of arguments is provided then an exception is raised.

For example, running test 19.2 from the Dynamo0.3 API test suite gives:

```
cd <PSYCLONEHOME>/src/psyclone/tests
psyclone test_files/dynamo0p3/19.2_single_stencil_broken.f90
"Generation Error: error: expected '5' arguments in the algorithm layer but found '4'.
Expected '4' standard arguments, '1' stencil arguments and '0' qr_arguments'"
```

# 10.1.9 Inter-grid

From the Algorithm layer, an Invoke for inter-grid kernels (those that map fields between grids of different resolution) looks much like an Invoke containing general-purpose kernels. The only restrictions to be aware of are that inter-grid kernels accept only field or field-vectors as arguments and that an Invoke may not mix inter-grid kernels with any other kernel type. (Hence the second, separate Invoke in the example Algorithm code given at the beginning of this Section.)

# 10.2 PSy-layer

The general details of the PSy-layer are explained in the *PSy layer* section. This section describes any dynamo0p3 specific issues.

#### 10.2.1 Module name

The PSy-layer code is contained within a Fortran module. The name of the module is determined from the algorithm-layer name with "\_psy" appended. The algorithm-layer name is the algorithm's module name if it is a module, its subroutine name if it is a subroutine that is not within a module, or the program name if it is a program.

So, for example, if the algorithm code is contained within a module called "fred" then the PSy-layer module name will be "fred\_psy".

# 10.3 Kernel

The general requirements for the structure of a Kernel are explained in the *Kernel layer* section. In the Dynamo API there are four different Kernel types; general purpose, CMA, inter-grid and *Built-ins*. In the case of built-ins, PSyclone generates the source of the kernels. This section explains the rules for the other three, user-supplied kernel types and then goes on to describe their metadata and subroutine arguments.

# 10.3.1 Rules for all User-Supplied Kernels

In the following, 'operator' refers to both LMA and CMA operator types.

- 1) A Kernel must have at least one argument that is a field, field vector, or operator. This rule reflects the fact that a Kernel iterates over a space and therefore must have some representation over that space.
- 2) The continuity of the iteration space of the Kernel is determined from the function space of the modified argument (see *Supported Function Spaces*). If more than one argument is modified then the iteration space is taken to be the largest required by any of those arguments. e.g. if a Kernel writes to two fields, the first on W3 (discontinuous) and the second on W1 (continuous), then the iteration space of that Kernel will be determined by the field on the continuous space.
- 3) If the function space of the modified argument(s) cannot be determined then they are assumed to be continuous. This is the case if any of the modified arguments are declared as ANY\_SPACE and their actual space cannot be determined statically. This assumption is always safe but leads to additional computation if the quantities being updated are actually on discontinuous function spaces.
- 4) Operators do not have halo operations operating on them as they are either cell- (LMA) or column-based (CMA) and therefore act like discontinuous fields.
- 5) Any Kernel that writes to an operator will have its iteration space expanded such that valid values for the operator are computed in the level-1 halo.

10.2. PSy-layer 63

6) Any Kernel that reads from an operator must not access halos beyond level 1. In this case PSyclone will check that the Kernel does not require values beyond the level-1 halo. If it does then PSyclone will abort.

# 10.3.2 Rules specific to General-Purpose Kernels without CMA Operators

- 1) General-purpose kernels accept arguments of any of the following types: field, field vector, LMA operator, scalar integer, scalar real.
- 2) A Kernel is permitted to write to more than one quantity (field or operator) and these quantities may be on the same or different function spaces.
- 3) A Kernel may not write to a scalar argument. (Only *Built-ins* are permitted to do this.) Any scalar aguments must therefore be declared in the metadata as GH\_READ see below.

# 10.3.3 Rules for Kernels that work with CMA Operators

The Dynamo 0.3 API has support for kernels that assemble, apply (or inverse-apply) column-wise/Column Matrix Assembly (CMA) operators. Such operators may also be used by matrix-matrix kernels. There are thus three types of CMA-related kernels. Since, by definition, CMA operators only act on data within a column, they have no horizontal dependencies. Therefore, kernels that write to them may be parallelised without colouring.

All three CMA-related kernel types must obey the following rules:

- 1) Since a CMA operator only acts within a single column of data, stencil operations are not permitted.
- 2) No vector quantities (e.g. "GH\_FIELD\*3" see below) are permitted as arguments.

There are then additional rules specific to each of the three CMA kernel types. These are described below.

## **Assembly**

CMA operators are themselves constructed from Local-Matrix-Assembly (LMA) operators. Therefore, any kernel which assembles a CMA operator must obey the following rules:

- 1) Have one or more LMA operators as read-only arguments.
- 2) Have exactly one CMA operator argument which must have write access.
- 3) Other types of argument (e.g. scalars or fields) are permitted but must be read-only.

# **Application and Inverse Application**

Column-wise operators can only be applied to fields. CMA-Application kernels must therefore:

- 1) Have a single CMA operator as a read-only argument.
- 2) Have exactly two field arguments, one read-only and one that is written to.
- 3) The function spaces of the read and written fields must match the from and to spaces, respectively, of the supplied CMA operator.

#### **Matrix-Matrix**

A kernel that has just column-wise operators as arguments and zero or more read-only scalars is identified as performing a matrix-matrix operation. In this case:

1) Arguments must be CMA operators and, optionally, one or more scalars.

2) Exactly one of the CMA arguments must be written to while all other arguments must be read-only.

## 10.3.4 Rules for Inter-Grid Kernels

- 1) An inter-grid kernel is identified by the presence of a field or field-vector argument with the optional *mesh\_arg* metadata element (see *Inter-Grid Metadata*).
- 2) An invoke that contains one or more inter-grid kernels must not contain any other kernel types. (This restriction is an implementation decision and could be lifted in future if there is a need.)
- 3) An inter-grid kernel is only permitted to have field or field-vector arguments.
- 4) All inter-grid kernel arguments must have the *mesh\_arg* metadata entry.
- 5) An inter-grid kernel (and metadata) must have at least one field on each of the fine and coarse meshes. Specifying all fields as coarse or fine is forbidden.
- 6) Fields on different meshes must always live on different function spaces.
- 7) All fields on a given mesh must be on the same function space.

A consequence of Rules 5-7 is that an inter-grid kernel will only involve two function spaces.

# 10.3.5 Metadata

The code below outlines the elements of the Dynamo0.3 API kernel metadata, 1) 'meta\_args', 2) 'meta\_funcs', 3) 'gh\_shape', 4) 'iterates\_over' and 5) 'procedure'.

```
type, public, extends(kernel_type) :: my_kernel_type
  type(arg_type) :: meta_args(...) = (/ ... /)
  type(func_type) :: meta_funcs(...) = (/ ... /)
  integer :: gh_shape = gh_quadrature_XYoZ
  integer :: iterates_over = cells
contains
  procedure, nopass :: my_kernel_code
end type
```

These five metadata elements are discussed in order in the following sections.

# meta\_args

The meta\_args array specifies information about data that the kernel code expects to be passed to it via its argument list. There is one entry in the meta\_args array for each scalar, field, or operator passed into the Kernel and the order that these occur in the meta\_args array must be the same as they are expected in the kernel code argument list. The entry must be of arg\_type which itself contains metadata about the associated argument. The size of the meta\_args array must correspond to the number of scalars, fields and operators passed into the Kernel.

**Note:** it makes no sense for a Kernel to have only **scalar** arguments (because the PSy layer will call a Kernel for each point in the spatial domain) and PSyclone will reject such Kernels.

For example, if there are a total of 2 scalar / field / operator entities being passed to the Kernel then the meta\_args array will be of size 2 and there will be two arg\_type entries:

10.3. Kernel 65

Argument-metadata (metadata contained within the brackets of an arg\_type entry), describes either a scalar, a field or an operator (either LMA or CMA).

The first argument-metadata entry describes whether the data that is being passed is for a real scalar (GH\_REAL), an integer scalar (GH\_INTEGER), a field (GH\_FIELD) or an operator (either GH\_OPERATOR for LMA or GH\_COLUMNWISE\_OPERATOR for CMA). This information is mandatory.

Additionally, argument-metadata can be used to describe a vector of fields (see the *Field Vector* section for more details).

As an example, the following meta\_args metadata describes 4 entries, the first is a real scalar, the next two are fields and the fourth is an operator. The third entry is a field vector of size 3.

```
type(arg_type) :: meta_args(4) = (/
    arg_type(GH_REAL, ...),
    arg_type(GH_FIELD, ...),
    arg_type(GH_FIELD*3, ...),
    arg_type(GH_OPERATOR, ...)
    /)
```

The second entry to argument-metadata (information contained within the brackets of an arg\_type) describes how the Kernel makes use of the data being passed into it (the way it is accessed within a Kernel). This information is mandatory. There are currently 5 possible values of this metadata GH\_WRITE, GH\_READ, GH\_INC, GH\_READWRITE and GH\_SUM. However, not all combinations of metadata entries are valid and PSyclone will raise an exception if an invalid combination is specified. Valid combinations are specified later in this section (see *Valid Access Modes*).

- GH\_WRITE indicates the data is modified in the Kernel before (optionally) being read.
- GH\_READ indicates that the data is read and is unmodified.
- GH\_INC indicates that different iterations of a Kernel make contributions to shared values. For example, values at cell faces may receive contributions from cells on either side of the face. This means that such a Kernel needs appropriate synchronisation (or colouring) to run in parallel.
- GH\_READWRITE indicates that different iterations of a Kernel update quantitites which do not share dofs, such
  as operators and fields over discontinuous function spaces. If a Kernel modifies only discontinuous fields and/or
  operators there is no need for synchronisation or colouring when running such Kernels in parallel. However,
  modifying another field with a GH\_INC access in a Kernel means that synchronisation or colouring is required
  for parallel runs.
- GH\_SUM is an example of a reduction and is the only reduction currently supported in PSyclone. This metadata indicates that values are summed over calls to Kernel code.

### For example:

```
type(arg_type) :: meta_args(4) = (/
    arg_type(GH_REAL, GH_SUM),
    arg_type(GH_FIELD, GH_INC, ...),
    arg_type(GH_FIELD*3, GH_WRITE, ...),
    arg_type(GH_OPERATOR, GH_READ, ...)
    /)
```

**Note:** In the Dynamo 0.3 API only *Built-ins* are permitted to write to scalar arguments (and hence perform reductions). Furthermore, this permission is currently restricted to real scalars (GH\_REAL) as the LFRic infrastructure does not yet

support integer reductions.

For a scalar the argument metadata contains only these two entries. However, fields and operators require further entries specifying function-space information. The meaning of these further entries differs depending on whether a field or an operator is being described.

In the case of an operator, the 3rd and 4th arguments describe the to and from function spaces respectively. In the case of a field the 3rd argument specifies the function space that the field lives on. More details about the supported function spaces are in subsection *Supported Function Spaces*.

For example, the metadata for a kernel that applies a Column-wise operator to a field might look like:

```
type(arg_type) :: meta_args(3) = (/ &
    arg_type(GH_FIELD, GH_INC, W1), &
    arg_type(GH_FIELD, GH_READ, W2H), &
    arg_type(GH_COLUMNWISE_OPERATOR, GH_READ, W1, W2H) &
    /)
```

In some cases a Kernel may be written so that it works for fields and/or operators from any type of w2 space i.e. one of w2, w2h or w2v. In this case the metadata should be specified as being any\_w2.

**Warning:** in the current implementation it is assumed that all fields and/or operators specifying any\_w2 within a kernel will use the **same** function space. It is up to the user to ensure this is the case as otherwise invalid code would be generated.

It may be that a Kernel is written such that a field and/or operators may be on/map-between any function space(s). In this case the metadata should be specified as being one of any\_space\_1, any\_space\_2, ..., any\_space\_9. The reason for having different names is that a Kernel might be written to allow 2 or more arguments to be able to support any function space but for a particular call the function spaces may have to be the same as each other.

In the example below, the first field entry supports any function space but it must be the same as the operator's to function space. Similarly, the second field entry supports any function space but it must be the same as the operator's from function space. Note, the metadata does not forbid ANY\_SPACE\_1 and ANY\_SPACE\_2 from being the same.

```
type(arg_type) :: meta_args(3) = (/ &
    arg_type(GH_FIELD, GH_INC, ANY_SPACE_1), &
    arg_type(GH_FIELD*3, GH_WRITE, ANY_SPACE_2), &
    arg_type(GH_OPERATOR, GH_READ, ANY_SPACE_1, ANY_SPACE_2) &
    /)
```

Note also that the scope of this naming of any-space function spaces is restricted to the argument list of individual kernels. i.e. if an Invoke contains say, two kernel calls that each support arguments on any function space, e.g. ANY\_SPACE\_1, there is no requirement that these two function spaces be the same. Put another way, if an Invoke contained two calls of a kernel with arguments described by the above metadata then the first field argument passed to each kernel call need not be on the same space.

**Note:** A GH\_FIELD argument that specifies GH\_WRITE or GH\_READWRITE as its access pattern must be a discontinuous function in the horizontal (see *Valid Access Modes* below). That means it must belong to w3, wtheta or w2v function spaces (see *Supported Function Spaces*). A GH\_FIELD that specifies GH\_INC as its access pattern may be continuous in the vertical (and discontinuous in the horizontal), continuous in the horizontal (and discontinuous in the vertical), or continuous in both. In each case the code is the same. However, if a field is discontinuous in the horizontal then it will not need colouring and, if is described as being on any space, there is currently no way to determine this from the metadata (unless we can statically determine the space of the field being passed in). At the moment this type

10.3. Kernel 67

of Kernel is always treated as if it is continuous in the horizontal, even if it is not.

### Valid Access Modes

As mentioned earlier, not all combinations of metadata are valid. Valid combinations are summarised here. All types of data (GH\_INTEGER, GH\_REAL, GH\_FIELD, GH\_OPERATOR and GH\_COLUMNWISE\_OPERATOR) may be read within a Kernel and this is specified in metadata using GH\_READ. At least one kernel argument must be listed as being modified. When data is *modified* in a Kernel then the permitted access modes depend on the type of data it is and the function space it is on. Valid values are given in the table below.

Argument Type	Function space	Access type
GH_INTEGER	n/a	GH_SUM (Built-ins only)
GH_REAL	n/a	GH_SUM (Built-ins only)
GH_FIELD	Discontinuous	GH_WRITE, GH_READWRITE
GH_FIELD	Continuous	GH_INC
GH_OPERATOR	Any for both 'to' and 'from'	GH_WRITE, GH_READWRITE
GH_COLUMNWISE_OPERATOR	Any for both 'to' and 'from'	GH_WRITE, GH_READWRITE

**Note:** As mentioned above, note that only Built-ins may modify scalar arguments. Since the LFRic infrastructure does not currently support integer reductions, integer scalar arguments are restricted to having read-only access.

There is no restriction on the number and function-spaces of other quantities that a general-purpose kernel can modify other than that it must modify at least one. The rules for kernels involving CMA operators, however, are stricter and only one argument may be modified (the CMA operator itself for assembly, a field for CMA-application and a CMA operator for matrix-matrix kernels). If a kernel writes to quantities on different function spaces then PSyclone generates loop bounds appropriate to the largest iteration space. This means that if a single kernel updates one quantity on a continuous function space and one on a discontinuous space then the resulting loop will include cells in the level 1 halo since they are required for a quantity on a continuous space. As a consequence, any quantities on a discontinuous space will then be computed redundantly in the level 1 halo. Currently PSyclone makes no attempt to take advantage of this (by e.g. setting the appropriate level-1 halo to 'clean').

PSyclone ensures that both CMA and LMA operators are computed (redundantly) out to the level-1 halo cells. This permits their use in kernels which modify quantities on continuous function spaces and also in subsequent redundant computation of other quantities on discontinuous function spaces. In conjunction with this, PSyclone also checks (when generating the PSy layer) that any kernels which read operator values do not do so beyond the level-1 halo. If any such accesses are found then PSyclone aborts.

### **Supported Function Spaces**

As mentioned in the *Field* and *Field Vector* sections, the function space of an argument specifies how it maps onto the underlying topology and, additionally, whether the data at a point is a vector.

Function spaces can share dofs between cells in the horizontal, vertical or both directions. Depending on the function space and FEM order, the shared dofs can lie on one or more cell entities (faces, edges and vertices) in each direction. This property is referred to as the **continuity** of a function space (horizontal, vertical or full). Alternatively, if there are no shared dofs a function space is described as **discontinuous** (fully or in a particular direction).

The mixed FEM formulation is built on a foundation set of four function spaces described below.

• w0 is the space of scalar functions with full continuity. The shared dofs lie on cell vertices in the lowest order FEM and on all three entities in higher order FEM.

- w1 is the space of vector functions with full continuity in the tangential direction only. In the lowest order FEM the shared dofs lie on cell edges for each component, whereas in higher order they also lie on cell faces.
- w2 is the space of vector functions with full continuity in the normal direction only. The shared dofs lie on cell faces for each component.
- w3 is the space of scalar functions with full discontinuity. All dofs lie within the cell volume and are not shared across the cell boundaries.

Additional function spaces required for representation of scalar or component-wise vector variables are:

- wtheta is the space of scalar functions based on the vertical part of w2, discontinuous in the horizontal and continuous in the vertical;
- w2v is the space of vector functions based on the vertical part of w2, discontinuous in the horizontal and continuous in the vertical;
- w2h is the space of vector functions based on the horizontal part of w2, continuous in the horizontal and discontinuous in the vertical.

Since the Dynamo0.3 API operates on columns of data, function spaces are categorised as continuous or discontinuous with regard to their horizontal continuity.

- Continuous function spaces are w0, w1, w2 and w2h;
- **Discontinuous** function spaces are w3, wtheta and w2v.

Two additional function space metadata descriptors as mentioned in sections above are:

- ANY\_W2 for any type of w2 function spaces;
- ANY\_SPACE for when the function space of the modified argument(s) cannot be determined and/or for when a Kernel has been written so that it works with fields on any of the available spaces.

As mentioned previously, both ANY\_W2 and ANY\_SPACE function space types are treated as continuous.

Horizontally discontinuous function spaces and fields over them will not need colouring so PSyclone does not perform it. If such attempt is made, PSyclone will raise a Generation Error in the **Dynamo0p3ColourTrans** transformation (see *Transformations* for more details on transformations). An example of fields iterating over a discontinuous function space wtheta is given in examples/dynamo/eg9, with the GH\_READWRITE access descriptor denoting an update to the relevant fields. This example also demonstrates how to only colour loops over continuous function spaces when transformations are applied.

### **Optional Field Metadata**

A field entry in the meta\_args array may have an optional fourth element. This element describes either a stencil access or, for inter-grid kernels, which mesh the field is on. Since an inter-grid kernel is not permitted to have stencil accesses, these two options are mutually exclusive. The metadata for each case is described in the following sections.

### **Stencil Metadata**

Stencil metadata specifies that the corresponding field argument is accessed as a stencil operation within the Kernel. Stencil metadata only makes sense if the associated field is read within a Kernel i.e. it only makes sense to specify stencil metadata if the first entry is GH\_FIELD and the second entry is GH\_READ.

Stencil metadata is written in the following format:

STENCIL (type)

10.3. Kernel 69

where type may be one of X1D, Y1D, XORY1D or CROSS. As the stencil extent (the maximum distance from the central cell that the stencil extends) is not provided in the metadata, it is expected to be provided by the algorithm writer as part of the invoke call (see Section *Stencils*). As there is currently no way to specify a fixed extent value for stencils in the Kernel metadata, Kernels must therefore be written to support different values of extent (i.e. stencils with a variable number of cells).

The XORY1D stencil type indicates that the Kernel can accept either X1D or Y1D stencils. In this case it is up to the algorithm developer to specify which of these it is from the algorithm layer as part of the invoke call (see Section *Stencils*).

For example, the following stencil (with extent=2):

```
| 4 | 2 | 1 | 3 | 5 |
```

#### would be declared as

```
STENCIL(X1D)
```

and the following stencil (with extent=2)

#### would be declared as

```
STENCIL (CROSS)
```

Below is an example of stencil information within the full kernel metadata.

```
type(arg_type) :: meta_args(3) = (/
    arg_type(GH_FIELD, GH_INC, W1),
    arg_type(GH_FIELD, GH_READ, W2H, STENCIL(CROSS)),
    arg_type(GH_OPERATOR, GH_READ, W1, W2H)
    /)
```

There is a full example of this distributed with PSyclone. It may be found in examples/dynamo/eg5.

# **Inter-Grid Metadata**

The alternative form of the optional fourth metadata argument for a field specifies which mesh the associated field is on. This is required for inter-grid kernels which perform prolongation or restriction operations on fields (or field vectors) existing on grids of different resolutions.

Mesh metadata is written in the following format:

```
mesh_arg=type
```

where type may be one of GH\_COARSE or GH\_FINE. Any kernel having a field argument with this metadata is assumed to be an inter-grid kernel and, as such, all of its other arguments (which must also be fields) must have it specified too. An example of the metadata for such a kernel is given below:

```
type(arg_type) :: meta_args(2) = (/ & arg_type(GH_FIELD, GH_INC, ANY_SPACE_1, mesh_arg=GH_COARSE), &
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
arg_type(GH_FIELD, GH_READ, ANY_SPACE_2, mesh_arg=GH_FINE ) &
/)
```

Note that an inter-grid kernel must have at least one field (or field-vector) argument on each mesh type. Fields that are on different meshes cannot be on the same function space while those on the same mesh must also be on the same function space.

## Column-wise Operators (CMA)

In this section we provide example metadata for each of the three recognised kernel types involving CMA operators.

Column-wise operators are constructed from cell-wise (local) operators. Therefore, in order to **assemble** a CMA operator, a kernel must have at least one read-only LMA operator, e.g.:

CMA operators (and their inverse) are **applied** to fields. Therefore any kernel of this type must have one read-only CMA operator, one read-only field and a field that is updated, e.g.:

**Matrix-matrix** kernels compute the product/linear combination of CMA operators. They must therefore have one such operator that is updated while the rest are read-only. They may also have read-only scalar arguments, e.g.:

```
type(arg_type) :: meta_args(3) = (/
    arg_type(GH_COLUMNWISE_OPERATOR, GH_WRITE, ANY_SPACE_1, ANY_SPACE_2), &
    arg_type(GH_COLUMNWISE_OPERATOR, GH_READ, ANY_SPACE_1, ANY_SPACE_2), &
    arg_type(GH_COLUMNWISE_OPERATOR, GH_READ, ANY_SPACE_1, ANY_SPACE_2), &
    arg_type(GH_REAL, GH_READ) /)
```

**Note:** The order with which arguments are specified in metadata for CMA kernels does not affect the process of identifying the type of kernel (whether it is assembly, matrix-matrix etc.)

# meta\_funcs

The (optional) second component of kernel metadata specifies whether any quadrature or evaluator data is required for a given function space. (If no quadrature or evaluator data is required then this metadata should be omitted.) Consider the following kernel metadata:

```
type, extends(kernel_type) :: testkern_operator_type
type(arg_type), dimension(3) :: meta_args = &
    (/ arg_type(gh_operator,gh_write,w0,w0), &
        arg_type(gh_field*3,gh_read,w1), &
        arg_type(gh_integer,gh_read) &
```

(continues on next page)

10.3. Kernel 71

(continued from previous page)

The  $arg\_type$  component of this metadata describes a kernel that takes three arguments (an operator, a field and an integer scalar). Following the  $meta\_args$  array we now have a  $meta\_funcs$  array. This allows the user to specify that the kernel requires basis functions ( $gh\_basis$ ) and/or the differential of the basis functions ( $gh\_diff\_basis$ ) on one or more of the function spaces associated with the arguments listed in  $meta\_args$ . In this case we require both for the W0 function space but only basis functions for W1.

# gh\_shape and gh\_evaluator\_targets

If a kernel requires basis or differential-basis functions then the metadata must also specify the set of points on which these functions are required. This information is provided by the gh\_shape component of the metadata. Currently PSyclone supports two shapes; gh\_quadrature\_XYoZ for Gaussian quadrature points and gh\_evaluator for evaluation (of the basis/differential-basis functions) at nodal points. For the latter, there are two options: if an evaluator is required for multiple function spaces then these can be specified using the additional gh\_evaluator\_targets metadata entry. This entry is a one-dimensional, integer array containing the desired function spaces. For example, to request basis/differential-basis functions evaluated on both W0 and W1 the metadata would be:

```
integer :: gh_shape = gh_evaluator
integer :: gh_evaluator_targets(2) = (/W0, W1/)
```

The kernel must have an argument (field or operator) on each of the function spaces listed in gh\_evaluator\_targets. The default behaviour if gh\_evaluator\_targets is not specified is to provide evaluators for each function space associated with the quantities that the kernel is updating. All necessary data is extracted in the PSy layer and passed to the kernel(s) as required - nothing is required from the Algorithm layer. If a kernel requires quadrature on the other hand, the Algorithm writer must supply a quadrature\_type object as the last argument to the kernel (see Section *Quadrature*).

Note that it is an error for kernel metadata to specify a value for gh\_shape if no basis or differential-basis functions are required. It is also an error to specify gh\_evaluator\_targets if the kernel does not require an evaluator (i.e. gh\_shape != gh\_evaluator).

### iterates over

The fourth type of metadata provided is ITERATES\_OVER. This specifies that the Kernel has been written with the assumption that it is iterating over the specified entity. For user-supplied kernels this currently only has one valid value which is CELLS.

### **Procedure**

The fifth and final type of metadata is procedure metadata. This specifies the name of the Kernel subroutine that this metadata describes.

For example:

procedure, nopass :: my\_kernel\_subroutine

# 10.3.6 Subroutine

# **Rules for General-Purpose Kernels**

The arguments to general-purpose kernels (those that do not involve either CMA operators or prolongation/restriction operations) follow a set of rules which have been specified for the Dynamo0.3 API. These rules are encoded in the generate() method within the Argordering abstract class in the dynamo0p3.py file. The rules, along with PSyclone's naming conventions, are:

- 1) If an LMA operator is passed then include the cells argument. cells is an integer and has intent in.
- 2) Include nlayers, the number of layers in a column. nlayers is an integer and has intent in.
- 3) For each scalar/field/vector\_field/operator in the order specified by the meta\_args metadata:
  - 1) if the current entry is a scalar quantity then include the Fortran variable in the argument list. The intent is determined from the metadata (see *meta\_args* for an explanation).
  - 2) if the current entry is a field then include the field array. The field array name is currently specified as being "field\_"<argument\_position>"\_"<field\_function\_space>. A field array is a real array of type r\_def and dimensioned as the unique degrees of freedom for the space that the field is on. This value is passed in separately. Again, the intent is determined from the metadata (see *meta\_args*).
    - 1) If the field entry has a stencil access then add an integer stencil-size argument with intent in. This will supply the number of cells in the stencil.
    - 2) If the field entry stencil access is of type XORY1D then add an integer direction argument with intent in.
  - 3) if the current entry field vector each dimension is a then for of the vector, include a field array. The field array name is specified as being using "field\_"<argument\_position>"\_"<field\_function\_space>"\_v"<vector\_position>. A field array in a field vector is declared in the same way as a field array (described in the previous step).
  - 4) if the current entry is an operator then first include a dimension size. This is an integer. The name of this size is operator\_name>"\_ncell\_3d". Next include the operator. This is a real array of type r\_def and is 3 dimensional. The first two dimensions are the local degrees of freedom for the to and from function spaces respectively. The third dimension is the dimension size mentioned before. The name of the operator is "op\_"<argument\_position>. Again the intent is determined from the metadata (see meta\_args).
- 4) For each function space in the order they appear in the metadata arguments (the to function space of an operator is considered to be before the from function space of the same operator as it appears first in lexicographic order)
  - 1) Include the number of local degrees of freedom (i.e. number per-cell) for the function space. This is an integer and has intent in. The name of this argument is "ndf\_"<field\_function\_space>.
  - 2) If there is a field on this space
    - 1) Include the unique number of degrees of freedom for the function space. This is an integer and has intent in. The name of this argument is "undf "<field function space>.
    - 2) Include the dofmap for this function space. This is an integer array with intent in. It has one dimension sized by the local degrees of freedom for the function space.
  - 3) For each operation on the function space (basis, diff\_basis, orientation) in the order specified in the metadata

10.3. Kernel 73

- if it is a basis or differential basis function then we must pass real arrays of kind r\_def with intent in:
  - gh\_quadrature\_xyoz then the rank gh shape is arrays are 4 with extent (dimension, number\_of\_dofs, np\_xy, The  $np_z)$ . of the argument is "basis\_"<field\_function\_space> name or "diff basis "<field function space>, as appropriate.
  - 2) if gh\_shape is gh\_evaluator then we pass one array for each target function space (e.g. as specified by gh\_evaluator\_targets). Each of these arrays are of rank 3 with extent (dimension, number\_of\_dofs, ndf\_<target\_function\_space>). The name of the argument is "basis\_"<field\_function\_space>"\_on\_"<target\_function\_space> or "diff\_basis\_"<field\_function\_space>"\_on\_"<target\_function\_space>, as appropriate.

where dimension is 1 or 3 and depends upon the function space and whether or not it is a basis or a differential basis function. For the former it is  $(w0=1, w1=3, w2=3, w3=1, wtheta=1, w2h=3, w2v=3, any_w2=3)$ . For the latter it is  $(w0=3, w1=3, w2=1, w3=3, wtheta=3, w2h=1, w2v=1, any_w2=3)$ . number\_of\_dofs is the number of degrees of freedom (dofs) associated with the function space and np\_\* are the number of points to be evaluated: i) \*\_xyz in all directions (3D); ii) \*\_xy in the horizontal plane (2D); iii) \*\_x, \*\_y in the horizontal (1D); and iv) \*\_z in the vertical (1D).

- 2) If it is an orientation array, include the associated argument. The argument is an integer array with intent in. There is one dimension of size the local degrees of freedom for the function space. The name of the array is "orientation\_"<field\_function\_space>.
- 5) If Quadrature is required (gh\_shape = gh\_quadrature\_\*)
  - 1) include integer, scalar arguments with intent in that specify the extent of the basis/diff-basis arrays:
    - 1) if gh\_shape is gh\_quadrature\_XYoZ then pass np\_xy and np\_z.
  - 2) include weights which are real arrays of kind r\_def:
    - 1) If gh\_quadrature\_XYoZ pass in w\_XZ (np\_xy) and w\_Z (np\_z)

### **Examples**

For instance, if a kernel has only one written argument and requires an evaluator then its metadata might be:

then we only pass the basis functions evaluated on W0 (the space of the written kernel argument). The subroutine arguments will therefore be:

where local\_stencil is the operator, xdata, ydata etc. are the three components of the field vector and map w0 is the dof map for the W0 function space.

If instead, gh\_evaluator\_targets is specified in the metadata:

then we will need to pass two sets of basis functions (evaluated at W0 and at W1):

#### **Rules for CMA Kernels**

Kernels involving CMA operators are restricted to just three types; assembly, application/inverse-application and matrix-matrix. We give the rules for each of these in the sections below.

### **Assembly**

An assembly kernel requires the column-banded dofmap for both the to- and from-function spaces of the CMA operator being assembled as well as the number of dofs for each of the dofmaps. The full set of rules is:

- 1) Include the cell argument. cell is an integer and has intent in.
- 2) Include nlayers, the number of layers in a column. nlayers is an integer and has intent in.
- 3) Include the number of cells in the 2D mesh, ncell\_2d, which is an integer with intent in.
- 4) Include the total number of cells, ncell\_3d, which is an integer with intent in.
- 5) For each argument in the meta\_args metadata array:
  - 1) If it is a LMA operator, include a real, 3-dimensional array of type r\_def. The first two dimensions are the local degrees of freedom for the to and from spaces, respectively. The third dimension is ncell\_3d.
  - 2) If it is a CMA operator, include a real, 3-dimensional array of type r\_def. The first dimension is is "bandwidth\_"<operator\_name>, the second is "nrow\_"<operator\_name>, and the third is ncell\_2d.
    - 1) Include the number of rows in the banded matrix. This is an integer with intent in and is named as "nrow\_"<operator\_name>.
    - 2) If the from-space of the operator is *not* the same as the to-space then include the number of columns in the banded matrix. This is an integer with intent in and is named as "ncol\_"<operator\_name>.
    - 3) Include the bandwidth of the banded matrix. This is an integer with intent in and is named as "bandwidth\_"<operator\_name>.

10.3. Kernel 75

- 4) Include banded-matrix parameter alpha. This is an integer with intent in and is named as "alpha\_"<operator\_name>.
- 5) Include banded-matrix parameter beta. This is an integer with intent in and is named as "beta\_"<operator\_name>.
- 6) Include banded-matrix parameter gamma\_m. This is an integer with intent in and is named as "gamma\_m\_"<operator\_name>.
- 7) Include banded-matrix parameter gamma\_p. This is an integer with intent in and is named as "gamma\_p\_"<operator\_name>.
- 3) If it is a field or scalar argument then include arguments following the same rules as for general-purpose kernels.
- 6) For each unique function space in the order they appear in the metadata arguments (the to function space of an operator is considered to be before the from function space of the same operator as it appears first in lexicographic order):
  - 1) Include the number of degrees of freedom per cell for the space. This is an integer with intent in. The name of this argument is "ndf\_"<arg\_function\_space>.
  - 2) If there is a field on this space then:
    - 1) Include the unique number of degrees of freedom for the function space. This is an integer and has intent in. The name of this argument is "undf\_"<field\_function\_space>.
    - 2) Include the dofmap for this space. This is an integer array with intent in. It has one dimension sized by the local degrees of freedom for the function space.
  - 3) If the CMA operator has this space as its to/from space then include the column-banded dofmap, the list of offsets for the to/from-space. This is an integer array of rank 2. The first dimension is "ndf\_"<arg\_function\_space>`` and the second is nlayers.

### Application/Inverse-Application

A kernel applying a CMA operator requires the column-indirection dofmap for both the to- and from-function spaces of the CMA operator. Since it does not have any LMA operator arguments it does not require the ncell\_3d and nlayers scalar arguments. (Since a column-wise operator is, by definition, assembled for a whole column, there is no loop over levels when applying it.) The full set of rules is then:

- 1) Include the cell argument. cell is an integer and has intent in.
- 2) Include the number of cells in the 2D mesh, ncell 2d, which is an integer with intent in.
- 3) For each argument in the meta args metadata array:
  - 1) If it is a field, include the field array. This is a real array of kind r\_def and is of rank 1. The field array name is currently specified as being "field\_"<argument\_position>"\_"<field\_function\_space>. The extent of the array is the number of unique degrees of freedom for the function space that the field is on. This value is passed in separately. The intent of the argument is determined from the metadata (see meta\_args).
  - 2) If it is a CMA operator, include it and its associated parameters (see Rule 5 of CMA Assembly kernels).
- 4) For each of the unique function spaces encountered in the metadata arguments (the to function space of an operator is considered to be before the from function space of the same operator as it appears first in lexicographic order):
  - 1) Include the number of degrees of freedom per cell for the associated function space. This is an integer with intent in. The name of this argument is "ndf" "<field function space>.

- 2) Include the number of unique degrees of freedom for the associated function space. This is an integer with intent in. The name of this argument is "undf\_"<field\_function\_space>.
- 3) Include the dofmap for this function space. This is a rank-1 integer array with extent equal to the number of degrees of freedom of the space ("ndf\_"<field\_function\_space>).
- 5) Include the indirection map for the to-space of the CMA operator. This is a rank-1 integer array with extent nrow.
- 6) If the from-space of the operator is *not* the same as the to-space then include the indirection map for the from-space of the CMA operator. This is a rank-1 integer array with extent ncol.

#### **Matrix-Matrix**

Does not require any dofmaps and also does not require the nlayers and ncell\_3d scalar arguments. The full set of rules are then:

- 1) Include the cell argument. cell is an integer and has intent in.
- 2) Include the number of cells in the 2D mesh, ncell\_2d, which is an integer with intent in.
- 3) For each CMA operator or scalar argument specifed in metadata:
  - 1) If it is a CMA operator, include it and its associated parameters (see Rule 5 of CMA Assembly kernels).
  - 2) If it is a scalar argument include the corresponding Fortran variable in the argument list with intent in.

### **Rules for Inter-Grid Kernels**

As already specified, inter-grid kernels are only permitted to take fields and/or field-vectors as arguments. Fields (and field-vectors) that are on different meshes must be on different function spaces. Fields on the same mesh must also be on the same function space.

Argument ordering follows the general pattern used for 'normal' kernels with field data being followed by dofmap data. The rules for arguments to inter-grid kernels are as follows:

- 1) Include nlayers, the number of layers in a column. nlayers is an integer and has intent in.
- 2) Include the cell\_map for the current cell (column). This is an integer array of rank one and intent in which provides the mapping from the coarse to the fine mesh. It has extent ncell\_f\_per\_c.
- 3) Include ncell\_f\_per\_c, the number of fine cells per coarse cell. This is an integer and has intent in.
- 4) Include ncell f, the number of cells (columns) in the fine mesh. This is an integer and has intent in.
- 5) For each argument in the meta\_args metadata array (which must be a field or field-vector):
  - 1) Pass in field data as done for a regular kernel.
- 6) For each unique function space (of which there will currently be two) in the order in which they are encountered in the meta\_args metadata array, include dofmap information:

If the dofmap is associated with an argument on the fine mesh:

- 1) Include ndf\_fine, the number of DoFs per cell for the FS of the field on the fine mesh.
- 2) Include undf\_fine, the number of unique DoFs per cell for the FS of the field on the fine mesh.
- 3) Include dofmap\_fine, the *whole* dofmap for the fine mesh. This is an integer array of rank two with intent in. The extent of the first dimension is ndf\_fine and that of the second is ncell\_f.

else, the dofmap is associated with an argument on the coarse mesh:

10.3. Kernel 77

- 1) Include undf\_coarse, the number of unique DoFs for the coarse field. This is an integer with intent in.
- 2) Include dofmap\_coarse, the dofmap for the current cell (column) in the coarse mesh. This is an integer array of rank one and has intent in.

# 10.4 Built-ins

The basic concept of a PSyclone Built-in is described in the *Built-ins* section. In the Dynamo 0.3 API, calls to Built-ins generally follow a convention that the field/scalar written to comes first in the argument list. Dynamo 0.3 Built-ins must conform to the following four rules:

- 1) Built-in kernels must have one and only one modified (i.e. written to) argument.
- 2) There must be at least one field in the argument list. This is so that we know the number of dofs to iterate over.
- 3) Kernel arguments must be either fields or scalars.
- 4) All field arguments to a given Built-in must be on the same function space. This is because all current Built-ins iterate over dofs and therefore all fields should have the same number. It also means that we can determine the number of dofs uniquely when a scalar is written to.

The Built-ins supported for the Dynamo 0.3 API are listed in the related subsections, grouped by the mathematical operation they perform. For clarity, the calculation performed by each Built-in is described using Fortran array syntax; this does not necessarily reflect the actual implementation of the Built-in (*e.g.* it could be implemented by PSyclone generating a call to an optimised maths library).

# 10.4.1 Naming scheme

The supported Built-ins in the Dynamo 0.3 API are named according to the scheme presented below. Any new Built-in needs to comply with these rules.

- 1) Ordering of arguments in Built-ins calls follows *LHS* (*result*) <- *RHS* (*operation on arguments*) direction, except where a Built-in returns the *LHS* result to one of the *RHS* arguments. In that case ordering of arguments remains as in the *RHS* expression, with the returning *RHS* argument written as close to the *LHS* as it can be without affecting the mathematical expression.
- 2) Field names begin with upper case in short form (e.g. **X**, **Y**, **Z**) and any case in long form (e.g. **Field1**, **field**).
- Scalar names begin with lower case: e.g. a, b, are scalar1, scalar2. Special names for scalars are: constant (or c), innprod (inner/scalar product of two fields) and sumfld (sum of a field).
- 4) Arguments in Built-ins variable declarations and constructs (PSyclone Fortran and Python definitions):
  - a) Are always written in long form and lower case (e.g. **field1**, **field2**, **scalar1**, **scalar2**);
  - b) LHS result arguments are always listed first;
  - c) *RHS* arguments are listed in order of appearance in the mathematical expression, except when one of them is the *LHS* result.
- 5) Built-ins names in Fortran consist of:
  - 1) *RHS* arguments in short form (e.g. **X**, **Y**, **a**, **b**) only;
  - 2) Descriptive of mathematical operation RHS name on arguments in the form <operationname> <RHSarg> for one RHSargument <RHSargs>\_<operationname>\_<RHSargs> for more;

- 3) Prefix "inc\_" where the result is returned to one of the *RHS* arguments (i.e. "inc\_"<RHSargs>\_<operationname>\_<RHSargs>).
- 6) Built-ins names in Python definitions are similar to their Fortran counterparts, with a few differences:
  - 1) Operators and *RHS* arguments are all in upper case (e.g. **X**, **Y**, **A**, **B**, **Plus**, **Minus**);
  - 2) There are no underscores;
  - 3) Common prefix is "Dyn", common suffix is "Kern".

## 10.4.2 Addition

Built-ins which add (scaled) fields are denoted with the keyword plus.

# X\_plus\_Y

**X\_plus\_Y** (field3, field1, field2)

Sums two fields (Z = X + Y):

```
field3(:) = field1(:) + field2(:)
```

#### where:

- type(field\_type), intent(out) :: field3
- type(field\_type), intent(in) :: field1
- type(field\_type), intent(in) :: field2

# inc\_X\_plus\_Y

inc\_X\_plus\_Y (field1, field2)

Adds the second field to the first and returns it (X = X + Y):

```
field1(:) = field1(:) + field2(:)
```

#### where:

- type(field\_type), intent(inout) :: field1
- type(field\_type), intent(in) :: field2

# aX\_plus\_Y

aX\_plus\_Y (field3, scalar, field1, field2)

Performs Z = aX + Y:

```
field3(:) = scalar*field1(:) + field2(:)
```

### where:

- real(r\_def), intent(in) :: scalar
- type(field\_type), intent(out) :: field3
- type(field\_type), intent(in) :: field1, field2

10.4. Built-ins 79

# inc\_aX\_plus\_Y

inc\_aX\_plus\_Y (scalar, field1, field2)

Performs X = aX + Y (increments the first field):

```
field1(:) = scalar*field1(:) + field2(:)
```

### where:

- real(r\_def), intent(in) :: scalar
- type(field\_type), intent(inout) :: field1
- type(field\_type), intent(in) :: field2

# inc\_X\_plus\_bY

inc\_X\_plus\_bY (field1, scalar, field2)

Performs X = X + bY (increments the first field):

```
field1(:) = field1(:) + scalar*field2(:)
```

#### where:

- real(r\_def), intent(in) :: scalar
- type(field\_type), intent(inout) :: field1
- type(field\_type), intent(in) :: field2

# aX\_plus\_bY

**aX\_plus\_bY** (field3, scalar1, field1, scalar2, field2)

Performs Z = aX + bY:

```
field3(:) = scalar1*field1(:) + scalar2*field2(:)
```

### where:

- real(r\_def), intent(in) :: scalar1, scalar2
- type(field\_type), intent(out) :: field3
- type(field\_type), intent(in) :: field1, field2

# inc\_aX\_plus\_bY

inc\_aX\_plus\_bY (scalar1, field1, scalar2, field2)

Performs X = aX + bY (increments the first field):

```
field1(:) = scalar1*field1(:) + scalar2*field2(:)
```

### where:

• real(r\_def), intent(in) :: scalar1, scalar2

- type(field\_type), intent(inout) :: field1
- type(field\_type), intent(in) :: field2

### 10.4.3 Subtraction

Built-ins which subtract (scaled) fields are denoted with the keyword minus.

# X\_minus\_Y

**X\_minus\_Y** (field3, field1, field2)

Subtracts the second field from the first and stores the result in the third (Z = X - Y):

```
field3(:) = field1(:) - field2(:)
```

### where:

- type(field\_type), intent(out) :: field3
- type(field\_type), intent(in) :: field1
- type(field\_type), intent(in) :: field2

### inc X minus Y

inc\_X\_minus\_Y (field1, field2)

Subtracts the second field from the first and returns it (X = X - Y):

```
field1(:) = field1(:) - field2(:)
```

### where:

- type(field\_type), intent(inout) :: field1
- type(field\_type), intent(in) :: field2

### aX minus Y

**aX\_minus\_Y** (field3, scalar, field1, field2)

Performs Z = aX - Y:

```
field3(:) = scalar*field1(:) - field2(:)
```

### where:

- real(r\_def), intent(in) :: scalar
- type(field\_type), intent(out) :: field3
- type(field\_type), intent(in) :: field1, field2

10.4. Built-ins 81

# X minus bY

**X\_minus\_bY** (field3, field1, scalar, field2)

Performs Z = X - bY:

```
field3(:) = field1(:) - scalar*field2(:)
```

### where:

- real(r\_def), intent(in) :: scalar
- type(field\_type), intent(out) :: field3
- type(field\_type), intent(in) :: field1, field2

# inc X minus bY

inc\_X\_minus\_bY (field1, scalar, field2)

Performs X = X - bY (increments the first field):

```
field1(:) = field1(:) - scalar*field2(:)
```

#### where:

- real(r\_def), intent(in) :: scalar
- type(field\_type), intent(inout) :: field1
- type(field\_type), intent(in) :: field2

# 10.4.4 Multiplication

Built-ins which multiply (scaled) fields are denoted with the keyword times.

# X\_times\_Y

**X\_times\_Y** (field3, field1, field2)

Multiplies two fields together and returns the result in a third field (Z = X\*Y):

```
field3(:) = field1(:) *field2(:)
```

# where:

- type(field\_type), intent(out) :: field3
- type(field\_type), intent(in) :: field1, field2

# inc\_X\_times\_Y

inc\_X\_times\_Y (field1, field2)

Multiplies the first field by the second and returns it (X = X\*Y):

```
field1(:) = field1(:)*field2(:)
```

### where:

- type(field\_type), intent(inout) :: field1
- type(field\_type), intent(in) :: field2

### inc aX times Y

inc\_aX\_times\_Y (scalar, field1, field2)

Performs X = a\*X\*Y (increments the first field):

```
field1(:) = scalar*field1(:)*field2(:)
```

#### where:

- real(r\_def), intent(in) :: scalar
- type(field\_type), intent(inout) :: field1
- type(field\_type), intent(in) :: field2

# 10.4.5 Scaling

Built-ins which scale fields are technically cases of multiplying a field by a scalar and are hence also denoted with the keyword **times**.

# a\_times\_X

**a\_times\_X** (field2, scalar, field1)

Multiplies a field by a scalar and stores the result in a second field (Y = a\*X):

```
field2(:) = scalar*field1(:)
```

### where:

- real(r\_def), intent(in) :: scalar
- type(field\_type), intent(out) :: field2
- type(field\_type), intent(in) :: field1

# inc\_a\_times\_X

inc\_a\_times\_X (scalar, field)

Multiplies a field by a scalar value and returns the field (X = a\*X):

```
field(:) = scalar*field(:)
```

# where:

- real(r\_def), intent(in) :: scalar
- type(field\_type), intent(inout) :: field

10.4. Built-ins 83

# 10.4.6 Division

Built-ins which divide (scaled) fields are denoted with the keyword divideby.

# X\_divideby\_Y

**X\_divideby\_Y** (field3, field1, field2)

Divides the first field by the second and returns the result in the third (Z = X/Y):

```
field3(:) = field1(:)/field2(:)
```

#### where:

- type(field\_type), intent(out) :: field3
- type(field\_type), intent(in) :: field1, field2

# inc\_X\_divideby\_Y

inc\_X\_divideby\_Y (field1, field2)

Divides the first field by the second and returns it (X = X/Y):

```
field1(:) = field1(:)/field2(:)
```

#### where:

- type(field\_type), intent(inout) :: field1
- type(field\_type), intent(in) :: field2

# 10.4.7 Setting to value

Built-ins which set field elements to some value and hence are denoted with the keyword setval.

## setval c

setval\_c (field, constant)

Sets all elements of the field *field* to the value *constant* (X = c):

```
field(:) = constant
```

# where:

- type(field\_type), intent(out) :: field
- real(r\_def), intent(in) :: constant

**Note:** The field may be on any function space.

# setval X

```
setval_X (field2, field1)
```

Sets a field *field2* equal to field *field1* (Y = X):

```
field2(:) = field1(:)
```

### where:

- type(field\_type), intent(out) :: field2
- type(field\_type), intent(in) :: field1

# 10.4.8 Raising to power

Built-ins which raise field elements to an exponent are denoted with the keyword **powreal** for real exponent or **powint** for integer exponent.

# inc X powreal a

# inc\_X\_powreal\_a (field, rscalar)

Raises a field to a real scalar value and returns the field  $(X = X^{**a})$ :

```
field(:) = field(:)**rscalar
```

### where:

- type(field\_type), intent(inout) :: field
- real(r\_def), intent(in) :: rscalar

# inc X powint n

```
inc_X_powint_n (field, iscalar)
```

Raises a field to an integer scalar value and returns the field  $(X = X^{**}n)$ :

```
field(:) = field(:) **iscalar
```

### where:

- type(field\_type), intent(inout) :: field
- integer(i\_def), intent(in) :: iscalar

# 10.4.9 Inner product

Built-ins which calculate the inner product of two fields or of a field with itself are denoted with the keyword **inner-product**.

10.4. Built-ins 85

# X\_innerproduct\_Y

### **X\_innerproduct\_Y** (innprod, field1, field2)

Computes the inner product of the fields field1 and field2, i.e.:

```
innprod = SUM(field1(:)*field2(:))
```

### where:

- real(r\_def), intent(out) :: innprod
- type(field\_type), intent(in) :: field1, field2

**Note:** When used with distributed memory this Built-in will trigger the addition of a global sum which may affect the performance and/or scalability of the code.

# X innerproduct X

## X\_innerproduct\_X (innprod, field)

Computes the inner product of the field *field1* by itself, *i.e.*:

```
innprod = SUM(field(:) *field(:))
```

### where:

- real(r\_def), intent(out) :: innprod
- type(field\_type), intent(in) :: field

**Note:** When used with distributed memory this Built-in will trigger the addition of a global sum which may affect the performance and/or scalability of the code.

# 10.4.10 Sum of elements

Built-in which sums the elements of a field is denoted with the keyword sum.

### sum X

sum\_X (sumfld, field)

Sums all of the elements of the field *field* and returns the result in the scalar variable *sumfld*:

```
sumfld = SUM(field(:))
```

#### where:

- real(r\_def), intent(out) :: sumfld
- type(field\_type), intent(in) :: field

**Note:** When used with distributed memory this Built-in will trigger the addition of a global sum which may affect the performance and/or scalability of the code.

# 10.5 Boundary Conditions

In the Dynamo0.3 API, boundary conditions for a field or LMA operator can be enforced by the algorithm developer by calling the Kernels enforce\_bc\_type or enforce\_operator\_bc\_type, respectively. These kernels take a field or operator as input and apply boundary conditions. For example:

The particular boundary conditions that are applied are not known by PSyclone, PSyclone simply recognises these kernels by their names and passes pre-specified dofmap and boundary\_value arrays into the kernel implementations, the contents of which are set by the LFRic infrastructure.

Up to and including version 1.4.0 of PSyclone, boundary conditions were applied automatically after a call to matrix\_vector\_type if the field arguments were on a vector function space (one of w1, w2, w2h or w2v). With the subsequent introduction of the ability to apply boundary conditions to operators this functionality is no longer required and has been removed.

Example eg4 in the examples/dynamo directory includes a call to enforce\_bc\_kernel\_type so can be used to see the boundary condition code that is added by PSyclone. See the README in the examples/dynamo directory for instructions on how to run this example.

example of applying boundary conditions to an operator is the kernel enforce\_operator\_bc\_kernel\_mod.F90 in the <PSYCLONEHOME>/src/psyclone/tests/ test\_files/dynamo0p3 directory. Since operators are discontinuous quantities, updating their values can be safely performed in parallel (see Section Kernel). The GH\_READWRITE access is used for updating discontinuous operators (see subsection *Valid Access Modes* for more details).

# 10.6 Conventions

The naming of Dynamo0.3 API kernels and associated entities (types, subroutines and modules) follows the PSyclone Fortran naming conventions (see *Fortran Naming Conventions*). However, PSyclone does not need this convention to be followed apart from the stub generator (see the *Stub Generation* Section ) where the name of the metadata to be parsed is determined from the module name.

The contents of the metadata is also usually declared private but this does not affect PSyclone.

Finally, the procedure metadata (located within the kernel metadata) usually has nopass specified but again this is ignored by PSyclone.

# 10.7 Configuration

# 10.7.1 Annexed DoFs

When a kernel iterates over dofs (rather than cells) for a continuous field using distributed memory (see the *Distributed Memory* Section), then PSyclone need only ensure that dofs owned by a processor are computed. However, for continuous fields, shared dofs at the boundary between processors must be replicated (as different cells share the same dof). Only one processor can own a dof, therefore processors will have continuous fields which contain dofs that the processor does not own. These unowned dofs are called *annexed* in the dynamo0.3 api and are a separate, but related, concept to field halos.

When a kernel that iterates over cells needs to read a continuous field then the annexed dofs must be up-to-date on all processors. If they are not then a halo exchange must be added. Currently PSyclone defaults, for kernels which iterate over dofs, to iterating over only owned dofs. This behaviour can be changed by setting  $COMPUTE\_ANNEXED\_DOFS$  to true in the dynamo0.3 section of the configuration file (see the Configuration section). PSyclone will then generate code to iterate over both owned and annexed dofs, thereby reducing the number of halo exchanges required (at the expense of redundantly computing annexed dofs). For more details please refer to the Dynamo0.3 developers section.

# 10.8 Transformations

This section describes the dynamo-api-specific transformations. In all cases, excepting **Dynamo0p3RedundantComputationTrans** and **Dynamo0p3AsyncHaloExchangeTrans**, these transformations are specialisations of generic transformations described in the *Transformations* section. The difference between these transformations and the generic ones is that these perform dynamo-api-specific checks to make sure the transformations are valid. In practice these transformations perform the required checks then call the generic ones internally.

The use of the dynamo-api-specific transformations is exactly the same as the equivalent generic ones in all cases excepting **DynamoLoopFuseTrans**. In this case an additional optional argument **same\_space** has been added to the **apply** method. The reason for this is to allow loop fusion when one or more of the iteration-spaces is determined by a function space that is unknown by PSyclone at compile time. This is the case when the **ANY\_SPACE** function space is specified in the Kernel metadata. By default PSyclone will not allow loop fusion if it does not know the spaces are the same. The **same\_space** option allows the user to specify that the spaces are the same. This option should therefore be used with caution. Note, if PSyclone knows the spaces are different this option has no effect and the transformation will always raise an exception.

The **Dynamo0p3RedundantComputationTrans** and **Dynamo0p3AsyncHaloExchange** transformations are only valid for the "Dynamo0p3" API. This is because this API is currently the only one that supports distributed memory. An example of redundant computation can be found in examples/dynamo/eg8 and an example of asynchronous halo exchanges can be found in examples/dynamo/eg11.

The Dynamo-specific transformations currently available are given below. If the name of a transformation includes "Dynamo0p3" it means that the transformation is only valid for this particular API. If the name of the transformation includes "Dynamo" then it should work with all versions of the Dynamo API.

**Note:** Only the loop-colouring and OpenMP transformations are currently supported for loops that contain inter-grid kernels. Attempting to apply other transformation types will result in PSyclone raising an error.

### class psyclone.transformations.DynamoExtractRegionTrans

Dynamo0.3 API application of ExtractRegionTrans transformation to extract code into a stand-alone program. For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>>
>>> API = "dynamo0.3"
>>> FILENAME = "solver_alg.x90"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse(FILENAME, api=API)
>>> psy = PSyFactory(API, distributed_memory=False).create(invoke_info)
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>>
>>> from psyclone.transformations import DynamoExtractRegionTrans
>>> etrans = DynamoExtractRegionTrans()
>>>
>>> # Apply DynamoExtractRegionTrans transformation to selected Nodes
>>> newsched, _ = etrans.apply(schedule.children[0:3])
>>> newsched.view()
```

#### name

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

### class psyclone.transformations.DynamoLoopFuseTrans

Performs error checking before calling the apply () method of the base class in order to fuse two Dynamo loops.

```
apply (node1, node2, same_space=False)
```

Fuse the two Dynamo loops represented by node1 and node2. The optional same\_space flag asserts that an unknown iteration space (i.e. any\_space) matches the other iteration space. This is set at the users own risk.

#### **Parameters**

- node1 (psyclone.dynamo0p3.DynLoop) First Loop to fuse.
- node2 (psyclone.dynamo0p3.DynLoop) Second Loop to fuse.

Returns two-tuple of modified Schedule and Memento

Return type psyclone.psyGen.Schedule, psyclone.undoredo.Memento

**Raises** *TransformationError* – if either of the supplied loops contains an inter-grid kernel.

### name

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

```
class psyclone.transformations.DynamoOMPParallelLoopTrans(omp_schedule='static')
```

Dynamo-specific OpenMP loop transformation. Adds Dynamo specific validity checks. Actual transformation is done by the base class.

### apply (node)

Perform Dynamo specific loop validity checks then call the apply () method of the base class.

Parameters node (psyclone.psyGen.Node) - the Node in the Schedule to check

Raises TransformationError – if the associated loop requires colouring.

#### name

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

### class psyclone.transformations.Dynamo0p3AsyncHaloExchangeTrans

Splits a synchronous halo exchange into a halo exchange start and halo exchange end. For example:

10.8. Transformations 89

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> api = "dynamo0.3"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse("file.f90", api=api)
>>> psy=PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>>
>>> from psyclone.transformations import Dynamo0p3AsyncHaloExchangeTrans
>>> trans = Dynamo0p3AsyncHaloExchangeTrans()
>>> new_schedule, memento = trans.apply(schedule.children[0])
>>> new_schedule.view()
```

### apply (node)

Transforms a synchronous halo exchange, represented by a HaloExchange node, into an asynchronous halo exchange, represented by HaloExchangeStart and HaloExchangeEnd nodes.

Parameters node (psyclone.psygen.HaloExchange) - A synchronous haloexchange node

**Returns** Tuple of the modified schedule and a record of the transformation.

Return type (psyclone.psyGen.Schedule, psyclone.undoredo.Memento)

#### name

**Returns** the name of this transformation as a string.

Return type str

### class psyclone.transformations.Dynamo0p3ColourTrans

Split a Dynamo 0.3 loop over cells into colours so that it can be parallelised. For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> import transformations
>>> import os
>>> import pytest
>>>
>>> TEST_API = "dynamo0.3"
>>> _,info=parse(os.path.join(os.path.dirname(os.path.abspath(__file__))),
                 "tests", "test_files", "dynamo0p3",
>>>
>>>
                 "4.6_multikernel_invokes.f90"),
>>>
                 api=TEST_API)
>>> psy = PSyFactory(TEST_API).create(info)
>>> invoke = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0')
>>> schedule = invoke.schedule
>>>
>>> ctrans = Dynamo0p3ColourTrans()
>>> otrans = DynamoOMPParallelLoopTrans()
>>>
>>> # Colour all of the loops
>>> for child in schedule.children:
       cschedule, _ = ctrans.apply(child)
>>>
>>> # Then apply OpenMP to each of the colour loops
>>> schedule = cschedule
>>> for child in schedule.children:
>>> newsched, _ = otrans.apply(child.children[0])
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
>>>
>>> newsched.view()
```

Colouring in the Dynamo 0.3 API is subject to the following rules:

- Only kernels with an iteration space of CELLS and which modify a continuous field require colouring. Any other type of loop will cause this transformation to raise an exception.
- · A kernel may have at most one field with 'INC' access
- A separate colour map will be required for each field that is coloured (if an invoke contains >1 kernel call)

## apply (node)

Performs Dynamo0.3-specific error checking and then uses the parent class to convert the Loop represented by node into a nested loop where the outer loop is over colours and the inner loop is over cells of that colour.

**Parameters node** (psyclone.dynamo0p3.DynLoop) – the loop to transform.

Returns 2-tuple of new schedule and memento of transform

```
Return type (psyclone.dynamo0p3.DynInvokeSchedule, psyclone.undoredo.Memento)
```

#### name

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

```
class psyclone.transformations.Dynamo0p30MPLoopTrans(omp_schedule='static')
```

Dynamo 0.3 specific orphan OpenMP loop transformation. Adds Dynamo-specific validity checks. Actual transformation is done by base class.

```
apply (node, reprod=None)
```

Perform Dynamo 0.3 specific loop validity checks then call OMPLoopTrans.apply().

## **Parameters**

- node (psyclone.psyGen.Node) the Node in the Schedule to check
- reprod (bool or None (default, which indicates to use the default from the config file))—if reproducible reductions should be used.

**Raises** *TransformationError* – if an OMP loop transform would create incorrect code.

#### name

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

### class psyclone.transformations.Dynamo0p3RedundantComputationTrans

This transformation allows the user to modify a loop's bounds so that redundant computation will be performed. Redundant computation can result in halo exchanges being modified, new halo exchanges being added or existing halo exchanges being removed.

- This transformation should be performed before any parallelisation transformations (e.g. for OpenMP) to the loop in question and will raise an exception if this is not the case.
- This transformation can not be applied to a loop containing a reduction and will again raise an exception if this is the case.
- This transformation can only be used to add redundant computation to a loop, not to remove it.
- This transformation allows a loop that is already performing redundant computation to be modified, but only if the depth is increased.

10.8. Transformations 91

# apply (loop, depth=None)

Apply the redundant computation tranformation to the loop loop. This transformation can be applied to loops iterating over 'cells or 'dofs'. if depth is set to a value then the value will be the depth of the field's halo over which redundant computation will be performed. If depth is not set to a value then redundant computation will be performed to the full depth of the field's halo.

### **Parameters**

- loop (psyclone.psyGen.DynLoop) the loop that we are transforming
- **depth** (*int* or None) the depth of the stencil. Defaults to None if a depth is not provided.

#### name

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

**CHAPTER** 

**ELEVEN** 

# **GOCEAN1.0 API**

# 11.1 Introduction

The GOcean 1.0 application programming interface (API) was originally designed to support ocean models that use the finite-difference scheme for two-dimensional domains. However, the approach is not specific to ocean models and can potentially be applied to any finite-difference code.

As with all PSyclone APIs, the GOcean 1.0 API specifies how a user must write the Algorithm Layer and the Kernel Layer to allow PSyclone to generate the PSy Layer. These Algorithm and Kernel APIs are discussed separately in the sections below. Before these we describe the functionality provided by the GOcean Library.

# 11.2 The GOcean Library

The use of PSyclone and the GOcean 1.0 API implies the use of a standard set of data types and associated infrastructure. This is provided by version 1.0 of the GOcean Library (GOLib v.1.0). Currently this library is distributed separately from PSyclone and is available from http://puma.nerc.ac.uk/trac/GOcean.

# 11.2.1 Grid

The GOLib contains a grid\_mod module which defines a grid\_type and associated constructor:

**Note:** The grid object itself must be declared with the target attribute. This is because each field object will contain a pointer to it.

The grid\_type constructor takes three arguments:

- 1. The type of grid (only GO\_ARAKAWA\_C is currently supported)
- 2. The boundary conditions on the domain for the *x*, *y* and *z* dimensions (see below). The value for the *z* dimension is currently ignored.

3. The 'index offset' - the convention used for indexing into offset fields.

Three types of boundary condition are currently supported:

Name	Description
GO_BC_NONE	No boundary conditions are applied.
GO_BC_EXTERNAL	Some external forcing is applied. This must be implemented by a kernel. The domain
	must be defined with a T-point mask (see <i>The grid_init Routine</i> ).
GO_BC_PERIODIC	Periodic boundary conditions are applied.

The infrastructure requires this information in order to determine the extent of the model grid.

The index offset is required because a model (kernel) developer has choice in how they actually implement the staggering of variables on a grid. This comes down to a choice of which grid points in the vicinity of a given T point have the same array (i, j) indices. In the diagram below, the image on the left corresponds to choosing those points to the South and West of a T point to have the same (i, j) index. That on the right corresponds to choosing those points to the North and East of the T point (this is the offset scheme used in the NEMO ocean model):



The GOcean 1.0 API supports these two different offset schemes, which we term GO\_OFFSET\_SW and GO\_OFFSET\_NE.

Note that the constructor does not specify the extent of the model grid. This is because this information is normally obtained by reading a file (a namelist file, a netcdf file etc.) which is specific to an application. Once this information has been obtained, a second routine, grid\_init, is provided with which to 'load' a grid object with state. This is discussed below.

### The grid init Routine

Once an application has determined the details of the model configuration, it must use this information to populate the grid object. This is done via a call to the grid\_init subroutine:

If no T-mask is supplied then this routine configures the grid appropriately for an all-wet domain with periodic boundary conditions in both the *x*- and *y*-dimensions. It should also be noted that currently only grids with constant resolution in *x* and *y* are supported by this routine.

# 11.2.2 Fields

Once a model has a grid defined it will require one or more fields. The GOLib contains a field\_mod module which defines an r2d\_field type (real, 2-dimensional field) and associated constructor:

```
use field_mod
...
!> Current ('now') sea-surface height at different grid points
type(r2d_field) :: sshn_u_fld, sshn_v_fld, sshn_t_fld
...
! Sea-surface height now (current time step)
sshn_u = r2d_field(model_grid, GO_U_POINTS)
sshn_v = r2d_field(model_grid, GO_V_POINTS)
sshn_t = r2d_field(model_grid, GO_T_POINTS)
```

The constructor takes two arguments:

- 1. The grid on which the field exists
- 2. The type of grid point at which the field is defined (GO\_U\_POINTS, GO\_V\_POINTS, GO\_T\_POINTS or GO\_F\_POINTS)

Note that the grid object need not have been fully configured (by a call to grid\_init for instance) before it is passed into this constructor.

# **11.2.3 Example**

PSyclone is distributed with a full example of the use of the GOcean Library. See <PSYCLONEHOME>/examples/gocean/shallow\_alg.f90. In what follows we will walk through a slightly cut-down example for a different program.

The following code illustrates the use of the GOLib in constructing an application:

```
program gocean2d
  use grid_mod ! From dl_esm_inf
  use field_mod ! From dl_esm_inf
  use model_mod
  use boundary_conditions_mod
  !> The grid on which our fields are defined. Must have the 'target'
  !! attribute because each field object contains a pointer to it.
  type(grid_type), target :: model_grid
  !> Current ('now') velocity component fields
  type(r2d_field) :: un_fld, vn_fld
  !> 'After' velocity component fields
  type(r2d_field) :: ua_fld, va_fld
  ! time stepping index
  integer :: istp
  ! Create the model grid. We use a NE offset (i.e. the {\it U}, {\it V} and {\it F}
  ! points immediately to the North and East of a T point all have the
  ! same i,j index). This is the same offset scheme as used by NEMO.
  model_grid = grid_type(GO_ARAKAWA_C,
                                                                         æ
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
(/GO_BC_EXTERNAL,GO_BC_EXTERNAL,GO_BC_NONE/), &
                         GO_OFFSET_NE)
  !! read in model parameters and configure the model grid
  CALL model_init(model_grid)
  ! Create fields on this grid
  ! Velocity components now (current time step)
  un_fld = r2d_field(model_grid, GO_U_POINTS)
  vn_fld = r2d_field(model_grid, GO_V_POINTS)
  ! Velocity components 'after' (next time step)
  ua_fld = r2d_field(model_grid, GO_U_POINTS)
  va_fld = r2d_field(model_grid, GO_V_POINTS)
  !! time stepping
  do istp = nit000, nitend, 1
   call step(istp,
              ua_fld, va_fld, un_fld, vn_fld,
              . . . )
  end do
end program gocean2d
```

The model\_init routine is application specific since it must determine details of the model configuration being run, *e.g.* by reading a namelist file. An example might look something like:

```
subroutine model_init(grid)
 type(grid_type), intent(inout) :: grid
  !> Problem size, read from namelist
 integer :: jpiglo, jpjglo
 real(wp) :: dx, dy
 integer, dimension(:,:), allocatable :: tmask
  ! Read model configuration from namelist
 call read_namelist(jpiglo, jpjglo, dx, dy, &
                     nit000, nitend, irecord, &
                     jphgr_msh, dep_const, rdt, cbfr, visc)
  ! Set-up the T mask. This defines the model domain.
 allocate(tmask(jpiglo, jpjglo))
 call setup_tpoints_mask(jpiglo, jpjglo, tmask)
  ! Having specified the T points mask, we can set up mesh parameters
 call grid_init(grid, jpiglo, jpjglo, dx, dy, tmask)
  ! Clean-up. T-mask has been copied into the grid object.
 deallocate (tmask)
end subroutine model_init
```

Here, only grid\_type and the grid\_init routine come from the GOLib. The remaining code is all application specific.

Once the grid object is fully configured and all fields have been constructed, a simulation will proceed by performing calculations with those fields. In the example program given above, this calculation is performed in the time-stepping loop within the step subroutine. The way in which this routine uses Invoke calls is described in the *Invokes* Section.

# 11.3 Algorithm

The Algorithm is the top-level specification of the natural science implemented in the software. Essentially it consists of mesh setup, field declarations, initialisation of fields and (a series of) Kernel calls. Infrastructure to support these tasks is provided in version 1.0 of the GOcean library (see *The GOcean Library*).

# **11.3.1 Invokes**

The Kernels to call are specified through the use of Invokes, e.g.:

The location and number of these call invoke (...) statements within the source code is entirely up to the user. The only requirement is that PSyclone must be run on every source file that contains one or more Invokes. The body of each Invoke specifies the kernels to be called, the order in which they are to be applied and the fields (and scalars) that they work with.

Note that the kernel names specified in an Invoke are the names of the corresponding kernel *types* defined in the kernel metadata (see the *Kernel* Section). These are not the same as the names of the Fortran subroutines which contain the actual kernel code. The kernel arguments are typically field objects, as described in the *Fields* Section, but they may also be scalar quantities (real or integer).

In the example gocean2d program shown earlier, there is only one Invoke call and it is contained within the step subroutine:

```
subroutine step(istp,
                                        æ
               ua, va, un, vn,
                sshn_t, sshn_u, sshn_v, &
               ssha_t, ssha_u, ssha_v, &
               hu, hv, ht)
 use kind_params_mod ! From dl_esm_inf
 use grid_mod     ! From dl_esm_inf
 use field_mod
                      ! From dl_esm_inf
 use model_mod, only: rdt ! The model time-step
 use continuity_mod, only: continuity
 use momentum_mod,
                      only: momentum_u, momentum_v
 use boundary_conditions_mod, only: bc_ssh, bc_solid_u
  !> The current time step
 integer,
                  intent(inout) :: istp
 type(r2d_field), intent(inout) :: un, vn, sshn_t, sshn_u, sshn_v
 type(r2d_field), intent(inout) :: ua, va, ssha_t, ssha_u, ssha_v
 type(r2d_field), intent(inout) :: hu, hv, ht
 call invoke(
                                                             &
              continuity(ssha_t, sshn_t, sshn_u, sshn_v,
                                                             δ
```

(continues on next page)

11.3. Algorithm 97

(continued from previous page)

```
hu, hv, un, vn, rdt), &

momentum_u(ua, un, vn, hu, hv, ht, &

ssha_u, sshn_t, sshn_u, sshn_v), &

momentum_v(va, un, vn, hu, hv, ht, &

ssha_v, sshn_t, sshn_u, sshn_v), &

bc_ssh(istp, ssha_t), &

bc_solid_u(ua), &

...

end subroutine step
```

Note that in this example the grid was constructed for a model with 'external' boundary conditions. These boundary conditions are applied through several user-supplied kernels, two of which (bc\_ssh and bc\_solid\_u) are include in the above code fragment.

# 11.4 Kernel

The general requirements for the structure of a Kernel are explained in the *Kernel layer* section. This section explains the metadata and subroutine arguments that are specific to the GOcean 1.0 API.

## 11.4.1 Metadata

The metadata for a GOcean 1.0 API kernel has four components:

- 1) 'meta\_args',
- 2) 'iterates\_over',
- 3) 'index offset' and
- 4) 'procedure':

These are illustrated in the code below:

```
type, extends(kernel_type) :: my_kernel_type
   type(go_arg), dimension(...) :: meta_args = (/ ... /)
   integer :: iterates_over = ...
   integer :: index_offset = ...
contains
   procedure, nopass :: code => my_kernel_code
end type my_kernel_type
```

These four metadata elements are discussed in order in the following sections.

## Argument Metadata: meta args

The meta\_args array specifies information about data that the kernel code expects to be passed to it via its argument list. There is one entry in the meta\_args array for each scalar, field, or grid-property passed into the Kernel. Their ordering in the meta\_args array must be the same as that in the kernel code argument list. The entry must be of type go\_arg which itself contains metadata about the associated argument. The size of the meta\_args array must correspond to the total number of scalars, fields and grid properties passed into the Kernel.

For example, if there are a total of two **field** entities being passed to the Kernel then the meta\_args array will be of size 2 and there will be two entries of type GO\_arg:

Argument-metadata (metadata contained within the brackets of an go\_arg entry), describes either a scalar, a field or a grid property.

The first argument-metadata entry describes how the kernel will access the corresponding argument. As an example, the following meta\_args metadata describes four entries, the first one is written to by the kernel while the remaining three are only read.

```
type(go_arg) :: meta_args(4) = (/
    go_arg(GO_WRITE, ...),
    go_arg(GO_READ, ...),
    go_arg(GO_READ, ...),
    go_arg(GO_READ, ...)
    %
    go_arg(GO_READ, ...)
```

The second entry to argument-metadata (information contained within the brackets of an go\_arg type) describes the type of data represented by the argument. This type falls into three categories; field data, scalar data and grid properties. For field data the metadata entry consists of the type of grid-point that field values are defined on. Since the GOcean API supports fields on an Arakawa C grid, the possible grid-point types are GO\_CU, GO\_CV, GO\_CF and GO\_CT. GOcean Kernels can also take scalar quantities as arguments. Since these do not live on grid-points they are specified as either GO\_R\_SCALAR or GO\_I\_SCALAR depending on whether the corresponding Fortran variable is a real or integer quantity. Finally, grid-property entries are used to specify any properties of the grid required by the kernel (e.g. the area of cells at U points or whether T points are wet or dry).

For example:

```
type(go_arg) :: meta_args(4) = (/
    go_arg(GO_WRITE, GO_CT, ...),
    go_arg(GO_READ, GO_CU, ...),
    go_arg(GO_READ, GO_R_SCALAR, ...),
    go_arg(GO_READ, GO_GRID_AREA_U)
    /)
```

Here, the first argument is a field on T points, the second is a field on U points, the fourth is a real scalar and the fifth is a property of the grid (cell area at U points).

The full list of supported grid properties in the GOcean 1.0 API is:

11.4. Kernel 99

Name	Description	Туре
go_grid_area_t	Cell area at T point	Real array, rank=2
go_grid_area_u	Cell area at U point	Real array, rank=2
go_grid_area_v	Cell area at V point	Real array, rank=2
go_grid_mask_t	T-point mask (1=wet, 0=dry)	Integer array, rank=2
go_grid_dx_t	Grid spacing in x at T points	Real array, rank=2
go_grid_dx_u	Grid spacing in x at U points	Real array, rank=2
go_grid_dx_v	Grid spacing in x at V points	Real array, rank=2
go_grid_dy_t	Grid spacing in y at T points	Real array, rank=2
go_grid_dy_u	Grid spacing in y at U points	Real array, rank=2
go_grid_dy_v	Grid spacing in y at V points	Real array, rank=2
go_grid_lat_u	Latitude of U points (gphiu)	Real array, rank=2
go_grid_lat_v	Latitude of V points (gphiv)	Real array, rank=2
go_grid_dx_const	Grid spacing in x if constant	Real, scalar
go_grid_dy_const	Grid spacing in y if constant	Real, scalar
go_grid_x_min_index	Minimum X index	Integer, scalar
go_grid_x_max_index	Maximum X index	Integer, scalar
go_grid_y_min_index	Minimum Y index	Integer, scalar
go_grid_y_max_index	Maximum Y index	Integer, scalar

These are stored in a dictionary named GRID\_PROPERTY\_DICT at the top of the gocean1p0.py file. All of the rank-two arrays have the first rank as longitude (x) and the second as latitude (y).

Scalars and fields contain a third argument-metadata entry which describes whether the kernel accesses the corresponding argument with a stencil. The value GO\_POINTWISE indicates that there is no stencil access. Metadata for a scalar field is limited to this value. Grid-property arguments have no third metadata argument. If there are no stencil accesses then the full argument metadata for our previous example will be:

If a kernel accesses a field using a stencil then the third argument metadata entry should take the form go\_stencil(...). Note, a stencil access is only allowed for a field that is READ by a kernel.

In the GOcean API, fields are implemented as two-dimensional arrays. In Fortran, a standard 5-point stencil would look something like the following:

```
a(i,j) + a(i+1,j) + a(i-1,j) + a(i,j+1) + a(i,j-1)
```

If we view the above accesses as co-ordinates relative to the a(i,j) access we get (0,0), (1,0), (-1,0), (0,1), (0,-1). If we then view these accesses in graphical form with i being in the horizontal direction and j in the vertical and with a 1 indicating a (depth-1) access and a 0 indicating there is no access we get the following:

```
010
111
010
```

In the GOcean API a stencil access is captured as a triplet of integers (one row at a time from top to bottom) using the above view i.e.

```
go_stencil(010,111,010)
```

So far we have only considered depth-1 stencils. In our notation the depth of access is captured by the integer value (0 for no access, 1 for depth 1, 2 for depth 2 etc). For example:

```
a(i,j) + a(i,j+1) + a(i,j+2)
```

would be captured as:

```
go_stencil(020,010,000)
```

All forms of stencil can be **summarised** using this triplet notation up to a depth of 9 apart from the central a (i, j) value which can either be 0 (not accessed) or 1 (accessed). Note, the central value is not currently used by PSyclone. The notation is a **summary** in two ways

- 1) it only captures the depth of the stencil in a particular direction, not the actual accesses. Therefore, there is no way to distinguish between the stencil a (i+2, j) and the stencil a (i+1, j) + a(i+2, j).
- 2) when there are offsets for both i and j e.g. a (i+1, j+1) it only captures whether there is an access in that direction at a particular depth, not the details of the access. For example, there is no way to distinguish between a (i+2, j+2) and a (i+2, j+2) + a (i+1, j+2) + a (i+2, j+1).

Whilst the description is a summary, it is accurate enough for PSyclone as this information is primarily used to determine which grid partitions must communicate with which for the purposes of placing halo exchange calls. In this case, it is the depth and direction information that is most important.

## **Iterates Over**

The second element of kernel metadata is ITERATES\_OVER. This specifies that the Kernel has been written with the assumption that it is iterating over grid points of the specified type. By default the supported values are: GO\_INTERNAL\_PTS, GO\_EXTERNAL\_PTS and GO\_ALL\_PTS. These may be understood by considering the following diagram of an example model configuration:

11.4. Kernel 101



GO\_INTERNAL\_PTS are then those points that are within the Model domain (fuscia box), GO\_EXTERNAL\_PTS are

those outside the domain and GO\_ALL\_PTS encompasses all grid points in the model. The chosen value is specified in the kernel-meta data like so:

```
integer :: iterates_over = GO_INTERNAL_PTS
```

A user can use a config file (see *Configuration*) to add additional iteration spaces to PSyclone.

#### **Index Offset**

The third element of kernel metadata, INDEX\_OFFSET, specifies the index-offset that the kernel uses. This is the same quantity as supplied to the grid constructor (see the *Grid* Section for a description).

The GOcean 1.0 API supports two different offset schemes; GO\_OFFSET\_NE, GO\_OFFSET\_SW. The scheme used by a kernel is specified in the metadata as, e.g.:

```
integer :: index_offset = GO_OFFSET_NE
```

Currently all kernels used in an application must use the same offset scheme which must also be the same as passed to the grid constructor.

#### **Procedure**

The fourth and final type of metadata is procedure metadata. This specifies the name of the Kernel Fortran subroutine that this metadata describes.

For example:

```
procedure :: my_kernel_code
```

# 11.4.2 Subroutine

#### **Rules**

Kernel arguments follow a set of rules which have been specified for the GOcean 1.0 API. These rules are encoded in the gen\_code() method of the GOKern class in the gocean1p0.py file. The rules, along with PSyclone's naming conventions, are:

- 1) Every kernel has the indices of the current grid point as the first two arguments, i and j. These are integers and have intent in.
- 2) For each field/scalar/grid property in the order specified by the meta\_args metadata:
  - 1) For a field; the field array itself. A field array is a real array of kind go\_wp and rank two. The first rank is longitude (x) and the second latitude (y).
  - 2) For a scalar; the variable itself. A real scalar is of kind go wp.
  - 3) For a grid property; the array or variable (see the earlier table) containing the specified property.

**Note:** Grid properties are not passed from the Algorithm Layer. PSyclone generates the necessary lookups in the PSy Layer and includes the resulting references in the arguments passed to the kernel.

As an example, consider the bc\_solid\_u kernel that is used in the gocean2d program shown earlier. The metadata for this kernel is:

11.4. Kernel 103

The interface to the subroutine containing the implementation of this kernel is:

As described above, the first two arguments to this subroutine specify the grid-point at which the computation is to be performed. The third argument is the field that this kernel updates and the fourth argument is the T-point mask. The latter is a property of the grid and is provided to the kernel call from the PSy Layer.

Comparing this interface definition with the use of the kernel in the Invoke call:

we see that in the Algorithm Layer the user need only provide the field(s) (and possibly scalars) that a kernel operates on. The index of the grid point and any grid properties are provided in the (generated) PSy Layer where the kernel subroutine proper is called.

# 11.5 Built-ins

The GOcean 1.0 API does not support any built-in operations.

# 11.6 Conventions

The GOcean 1.0 API kernel code conforms to the PSyclone Fortran naming conventions (see *Fortran Naming Conventions*). However, PSyclone's support for the GOcean 1.0 API does not rely on this convention.

The contents of the kernel metadata is usually declared private but this does not affect PSyclone.

Finally, the procedure metadata (located within the kernel metadata) usually has nopass specified but again this is ignored by PSyclone.

# 11.7 Configuration

The configuration file (see *Configuration*) used by PSyclone can contain GOcean 1.0 specific options. For example, after the default section the GOcean 1.0 specific section looks like this:

The supported keys are listed in the next section.

# 11.7.1 Iteration-spaces

This section lists additional iteration spaces that can be used in a kernel metadata declaration to allow PSyclone to create a loop with different loop boundaries. Each line of the iteration—spaces declaration contains 7 values, separated by ':'. The fields are:

Field	Description	Details
1	Index Offset	See Index Offset.
2	grid-point types	See Grid point types.
3	Iterates Over	See Iterates Over.
4	Start index of outer loop	Start index of North-South loop.
5	End index of outer loop	End index of North-South loop.
6	Start index of inner loop	Start index of East-West loop.
7	End index of inner loop	End index of East-West loop.

Two special variables can be used in an iteration space: {start} and {stop}. These values will be replaced by PSyclone with the correct loop boundaries for the inner points of a grid (i.e. the non-halo area). This means that the depth-1 halo region can be specified using {start}-1 and {stop}+1.

For example, given the iteration-spaces declaration above, a kernel declared with iterates\_over=internal\_ns\_halo for a field type ct and index offset offset\_sw would create the following loop boundaries:

```
DO j=2-1, jstop+1

DO i=2, istop

CALL (i, j, ...)

END DO

END DO
```

**Warning:** With user defined iteration spaces it is possible that PSyclone will create code that does not compile: if you specify syntactically correct, but semantically incorrect boundary definitions, the PSyclone internal tests will accept the new iteration space, but the compiler will not. For example if one of the loop boundaries contains the name of a variable that is not defined, compilation will fail. It is the responsibility of the user to make sure that valid loop boundaries are specified in a new iteration space definition.

# 11.8 Transformations

In this section we describe the transformations that are specific to the GOcean 1.0 API. For an overview of transformations in general see *Transformations*.

11.7. Configuration

#### class psyclone.transformations.GOceanExtractRegionTrans

GOcean 1.0 API application of ExtractRegionTrans transformation to extract code into a stand-alone program. For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>>
>>> API = "gocean1.0"
>>> FILENAME = "shallow_alg.f90"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse(FILENAME, api=API)
>>> psy = PSyFactory(API, distributed_memory=False).create(invoke_info)
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>>
>>> from psyclone.transformations import GOceanExtractRegionTrans
>>> etrans = GOceanExtractRegionTrans()
>>>
>>> # Apply GOceanExtractRegionTrans transformation to selected Nodes
>>> newsched, _ = etrans.apply(schedule.children[0])
>>> newsched.view()
```

#### name

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

### class psyclone.transformations.GOceanLoopFuseTrans

Performs error checking (that the loops are over the same grid-point type) before calling the <code>LoopFuseTrans.apply()</code> method of the <code>base class</code> in order to fuse two GOcean loops.

#### apply (node1, node2)

Fuse the two GOcean loops represented by node1 and node2.

#### **Parameters**

- node1 (psyclone.gocean1p0.GOLoop) A node representing a GOLoop.
- node2 (psyclone.gocean1p0.GOLoop) A node representing a GOLoop.

**Raises** *TransformationError* – if the supplied node2 can not be fused, e.g. not all nodes are loops, don't have the same parent, are not next to each other or have different iteration spaces.

#### name

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

### class psyclone.transformations.GOceanOMPParallelLoopTrans(omp\_schedule='static')

GOcean specific OpenMP Do loop transformation. Adds GOcean specific validity checks (that supplied Loop is an inner or outer loop). Actual transformation is done by base class.

**Parameters** omp\_schedule - The omp schedule to be created. Must be one of 'runtime', 'static', 'dynamic', 'guided' or 'auto'.

## apply (node)

Perform GOcean-specific loop validity checks then call OMPParallelLoopTrans.apply().

Parameters node (psyclone.psyGen.Loop) - A Loop node from an AST.

**Raises** *TransformationError* – if the supplied node is not an inner or outer loop.

#### name

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

```
class psyclone.transformations.GOceanOMPLoopTrans(omp_schedule='static')
```

GOcean-specific orphan OpenMP loop transformation. Adds GOcean specific validity checks (that the node is either an inner or outer Loop). Actual transformation is done by base class.

**Parameters** omp\_schedule - The omp schedule to be created. Must be one of 'runtime', 'static', 'dynamic', 'guided' or 'auto'.

```
apply (node)
```

Perform GOcean specific loop validity checks then call OMPLoopTrans.apply().

Parameters node (psyclone.psyGen.Loop.) - The loop to parallelise using OMP Do.

#### name

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

## class psyclone.transformations.GOConstLoopBoundsTrans

Switch on (or off) the use of constant loop bounds within a GOInvokeSchedule. In the absence of constant loop bounds, PSyclone will generate loops where the bounds are obtained by de-referencing a field object, e.g.:

```
DO j = my_field%grid%internal%ystart, my_field%grid%internal%ystop
```

Some compilers are able to produce more efficient code if they are provided with information on the relative trip-counts of the loops within an Invoke. With constant loop bounds switched on, PSyclone generates code like:

```
ny = my_field%grid%subdomain%internal%ystop
...
DO j = 1, ny-1
```

In practice, the application of the constant loop bounds looks something like, e.g.:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> import os
>>> TEST_API = "gocean1.0"
>>> _, info = parse(os.path.join("tests", "test_files", "gocean1p0",
                                 "single_invoke.f90"),
>>>
>>>
                    api=TEST_API)
>>> psy = PSyFactory (TEST_API).create(info)
>>> invoke = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0_compute_cu')
>>> schedule = invoke.schedule
>>> from psyclone.transformations import GOConstLoopBoundsTrans
>>> clbtrans = GOConstLoopBoundsTrans()
>>>
>>> newsched, _ = clbtrans.apply(schedule)
>>> # or, to turn off const. looop bounds:
>>> # newsched, _ = clbtrans.apply(schedule, const_bounds=False)
>>>
>>> newsched.view()
```

## apply (node, const\_bounds=True)

Switches constant loop bounds on or off for all loops in a GOInvokeSchedule. Default is 'on'.

## **Parameters**

11.8. Transformations 107

- **node** (psyclone.gocean1p0.GOInvokeSchedule) The GOInvokeSchedule of which all loops will get the constant loop bounds switched on or off.
- const\_bounds (bool) If the constant loop should be used (True) or not (False). Default is True.

#### name

Return the name of the Transformation as a string.

### class psyclone.transformations.GOLoopSwapTrans

Provides a loop-swap transformation, e.g.:

```
DO j=1, m
DO i=1, n
```

#### becomes:

```
DO i=1, n
DO j=1, m
```

This transform is used as follows:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse("shallow_alg.f90")
>>> psy = PSyFactory("gocean1.0").create(invokeInfo)
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>>
>>> from psyclone.transformations import GOLoopSwapTrans
>>> swap = GOLoopSwapTrans()
>>> new_schedule, memento = swap.apply(schedule.children[0])
>>> new_schedule.view()
```

## apply (outer)

The argument outer must be a loop which has exactly one inner loop. This transform then swaps the outer and inner loop.

Parameters outer (psyclone.psyGen.Loop) - The node representing the outer loop.

**Returns** A tuple consisting of the new schedule, and a Memento.

**Raises** *TransformationError* – if the supplied node does not allow a loop swap to be done.

#### name

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

**CHAPTER** 

# **TWELVE**

# **NEMO API**

In contrast to the other APIs supported by PSyclone, the NEMO API is designed to work with source code that does *not* follow the PSyKAl separation of concerns. Instead, the NEMO source code is treated as if it were a manually written PSy layer with all kernels in-lined. This approach relies upon the NEMO Coding Conventions [nem13] in order to reason about the code being processed. Rather than construct an InvokeSchedule for the PSy layer from scratch (as is done for other APIs), the InvokeSchedule is constructed by parsing the supplied Fortran code and generating a higher-level representation.

Note: the NEMO API is currently only a prototype. The known issues are listed in *Limitations*.

# 12.1 Algorithm

Since NEMO source is treated as a pre-existing PSy layer, this API does not have the concept of an Algorithm layer.

# 12.2 Constructing the PSyIR

Transformations in PSyclone are applied to an Internal Representation, the "PSyIR." In contrast to the other APIs where the PSyIR is constructed from scratch, for NEMO PSyclone must parse the existing Fortran and create a higher-level representation of it. This is done using rules based upon the NEMO Coding Conventions [nem13]. These rules are described in the following sections.

# 12.2.1 Loops

# **Explicit**

PSyclone recognises the following loop types, based on the name of the loop variable:

Loop type	Loop variable	
Vertical levels	jk	
Latitude	ji	
Longitude	jj	
Tracer species	jn	

PSyclone currently assumes that each of these loop types may be safely parallelised. In practice this will not always be the case (e.g. when performing a tri-diagonal solve) and this implementation will need to be refined.

## **Implicit**

The use of Fortran array notation is encouraged in the NEMO Coding Conventions [nem13] (section 4.2) and is employed throughout the NEMO code base. The Coding Conventions mandate that the shape of every array in such expressions must be specified, e.g.:

```
onedarraya(:) = onedarrayb(:) + onedarrayc(:)
twodarray (:,:) = scalar * anothertwodarray(:,:)
```

PSyclone therefore also recognises the loops implied by this notation.

It has been found by CMCC and Intel that the Intel compiler is better able to OpenMP-parallelise explicit loops. Therefore, PSyclone provides a transformation to allow the user to convert implicit loops into explicit loop nests (see *Transformations*). However, as with all compiler-specific optimisations, whether or not this transformation is beneficial will depend on the precise details of the compiler being used.

Note, not all uses of Fortran array notation in NEMO imply a loop. For instance:

```
ascalar = afunc(twodarray(:,:))
```

is actually a function call which is passed a reference to twodarray. However, if the quantity being assigned to is actually an array, e.g.:

```
twodarray2(:,:) = afunc(twodarray(:,:))
```

then this does represent a loop. However, currently PSyclone does not recognise any occurrences of array notation that are themselves within an array access or function call. It is therefore not yet possible to transform such implicit loops into explicit loops. It is hoped that this limitation will be removed in future releases of PSyclone by adding the ability to discover the interface to functions such as afunc and thus determining whether they return scalar or array quantities.

# 12.3 Example

A typical fragment of NEMO source code (taken from the traldf\_iso routine) is shown below:

```
DO jn = 1, kjpt

zdit (1,:,:) = 0._wp ; zdit (jpi,:,:) = 0._wp

zdjt (1,:,:) = 0._wp ; zdjt (jpi,:,:) = 0._wp

DO jk = 1, jpkm1

DO jj = 1, jpjm1

DO ji = 1, fs_jpim1

zdit(ji,jj,jk) = (ptb(ji+1,jj ,jk,jn) - ptb(ji,jj,jk,jn)) * umask(ji,jj,

jk)

zdjt(ji,jj,jk) = (ptb(ji ,jj+1,jk,jn) - ptb(ji,jj,jk,jn)) * vmask(ji,jj,

jk)

END DO

END DO

END DO
```

PSyclone uses fparser2 to parse such source code and then generates the PSy Internal Representation of it:

```
Loop[type='tracers',field_space='None',it_space='None']
Loop[type='None',field_space='None',it_space='None']
Loop[type='None',field_space='None',it_space='None']
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
Loop[type='None', field_space='None', it_space='None']
Loop[type='None', field_space='None', it_space='None']
Loop[type='levels', field_space='None', it_space='None']
Loop[type='lat', field_space='None', it_space='None']
Loop[type='lon', field_space='None', it_space='None']
KernCall[]
```

# 12.4 Transformations

This section describes the transformations that are specific to the NEMO API. For an overview of transformations in general see *Transformations*.

class psyclone.transformations.NemoExplicitLoopTrans

Transforms the outermost array slice in an implicit loop in a NEMOInvokeSchedule into an explicit loop. For example, if "implicit\_loop.f90" contained:

```
my_array(:, :, :) = 1.0
```

then doing:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> api = "nemo"
>>> filename = "implicit_loop.f90"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse(filename, api=api)
>>> psy = PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)
>>>
>>> from psyclone.transformations import NemoExplicitLoopTrans
>>> rtrans = NemoExplicitLoopTrans()
>>>
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> loop = schedule.children[0]
>>> newloop, _ = rtrans.apply(loop)
```

will create a new NemoLoop object for an explicit loop over levels (the outermost slice) that then contains an implicit loop:

```
DO jk = 1, jpk

my_array(:, ;, jk) = 1.0

END DO
```

Subsequently applying *rtrans* to *newloop* will create:

```
DO jk = 1, jpk

DO jj = 1, jpj

my_array(:, jj, jk) = 1.0

END DO

END DO
```

apply (loop)

Transform the outermost array slice in the supplied implicit loop into an explicit loop.

Parameters loop (psyclone.nemo.NemoImplicitLoop) - the NemoImplicitLoop to transform.

12.4. Transformations 111

Returns a new PSyIR loop object and a memento of the transformation.

Return type (psyclone.nemo.NemoLoop, psyclone.undoredo.Memento)

#### Raises

- NotImplementedError if the array slice has explicit bounds.
- TransformationError if an array slice is not in dimensions 1-3 of the array.

#### name

**Returns** the name of this transformation class.

Return type str

### validate(loop)

Check that the supplied loop is a valid target for this transformation.

Parameters loop (psyclone.nemo.NemoImplicitLoop) - the loop node to validate.

Raises TransformationError – if the supplied loop is not a NemoImplicitLoop.

The type of the loop being transformed is inferred from the position of the colon(s) in the array subscripts. Since NEMO uses (ji,jj,jk) index ordering (longitude, latitude, levels) this means that loop types are determined according to the following table:

Array index	Loop type	Loop limits
1	Longitude	1, jpi
2	Latitude	1, jpj
3	Vertical levels	1, jpk

If this transformation encounters an implicit loop in an array index other than 1-3 then currently PSyclone will raise an error.

# 12.5 Limitations

The NEMO API is currently only a prototype implementation. Here we list the current, known limitations/issues:

- 1. When transforming implicit loops into explicit loops, the declaration of the loop variables can be repeated (there is an x-failing test for this);
- 2. Scalar variables inside loops are not made private when parallelising using OpenMP;
- 3. All recognised loops (levels, latitude etc.) are assumed to be parallelisable. This will not always be the case (e.g. tridiagonal solve has a loop-carried dependence in the vertical);
- 4. Labelled do-loops are not handled (i.e. they will be put inside a 'CodeBlock' in the PSyIR);
- 5. Loops are currently only permitted to contain one kernel. This restriction will have to be lifted in order to permit loop fusion;
- 6. Array slices with specified bounds (e.g. umask(1:10)) are not yet supported and will raise a TransformationError when attempting to transform them into explicit loops;
- 7. When generating new variable names, no attempt is made to avoid clashing with variables already present in the NEMO source. This needs to be resolved by querying the SymbolTable (#381);
- 8. The psyGen.Node base class now has an \_ast property to hold a pointer into the associated fparser2 AST. However, the psyGen.Kern class already has an \_fp2\_ast property that points to the whole fparser2 AST of the kernel code. This will be rationalised in #241.

**CHAPTER** 

# **THIRTEEN**

# STUB GENERATION

# 13.1 Quick Start

- 1) Use an existing Kernel file or create a Kernel file containing a Kernel module with the required metadata and an empty Kernel subroutine with no arguments.
- 2) Run the following command

> genkernelstub <PATH>/my\_file.f90

# 13.2 Introduction

PSyclone provides a kernel stub generator for the Dynamo0.3 API. The kernel stub generator takes a kernel file as input and outputs the kernel subroutine arguments and declarations. The word "stub" is used to indicate that it is only the subroutine arguments and their declarations that are generated; the subroutine has no content.

The primary reason the stub generator is useful is that it generates the correct Kernel subroutine arguments and declarations for the Dynamo0.3 API as specified by the Kernel metadata. As the number of arguments to Kernel subroutines can become large and the arguments have to follow a particular order, it can become burdensome, and potentially error prone, for the user to have to work out the appropriate argument list if written by hand.

The stub generator can be used when creating a new Kernel. A Kernel can first be written to specify the required metadata and then the generator can be used to create the appropriate (empty) Kernel subroutine. The user can then fill in the content of the subroutine.

The stub generator can also be used to check whether the arguments for an existing Kernel are correct i.e. whether the Kernel subroutine and Kernel metadata are consistent. One example would be where a Kernel is updated resulting in a change to the metadata and subroutine arguments.

The Dynamo0.3 API requires Kernels to conform to a set of rules which determine the required arguments and types for a particular Kernel. These rules are required as the generated PSy layer needs to know exactly how to call a Kernel. These rules are outlined in Section *Rules*.

Therefore PSyclone has been coded with the Dynamo0.3 API rules which are then applied when reading the Kernel metadata to produce the require Kernel call and its arguments in the generated PSy layer. These same rules are used by the Kernel stub generator to produce Kernel subroutine stubs, thereby guaranteeing that Kernel calls from the PSy layer and the associated Kernel subroutines are consistent.

# 13.3 Use

Before using the stub generator, PSyclone must be installed. If you have not already done so, please follow the instructions for setting up PSyclone in Section *Getting Going*.

PSyclone will be installed in a particular location on your machine, which will be referred to as the <PSYCLONEINSTALL> directory. The stub generator script genkernelstub comes with the PSyclone installation. A quick check > which genkernelstub should return the location of the <PSYCLONEINSTALL>/bin directory.

The easiest way to use the stub generator is to run the supplied genkernelstub script.

```
> genkernelstub usage: genkernelstub [-h] [-o OUTFILE] [-api API] [-l] filename genkernelstub: error: too few arguments
```

You can get information about the genkernelstub arguments using -h or --help:

```
genkernelstub -h
usage: genkernelstub [-h] [-o OUTFILE] [-api API] [-l] filename
Create Kernel stub code from Kernel metadata
positional arguments:
 filename
                       Kernel metadata
optional arguments:
 -h, --help
                       show this help message and exit
  -o OUTFILE, --outfile OUTFILE
                       filename of output
 -api API
                       choose a particular api from ['dynamo0.3'], default
                        dynamo0.3
 -1, --limit
                       limit the fortran line length to 132 characters
```

As is indicated when using the -h option, the -api option only accepts dynamo0.3 at the moment and is redundant as this option is also the default. However the number of supported APIs is expected to expand in the future.

The  $-\circ$ , or  $-\circ$ utfile option allows the user to specify that the output should be written to a particular file. If  $-\circ$  is not specified then the python print statement is used. Typically the print statement results in the output being printed to the terminal.

The -1, or --limit option utilises the PSyclone support for wrapping of lines within the 132 character limit (please see the *Line Length* chapter for more details).

# 13.4 Kernels

Any Dynamo 0.3 kernel can be used as input to the stub generator. Example Kernels can be found in the examples/dynamo repository or, for more simple cases, in the tests/test\_files/dynamo0p3 directory. These directories are located in the <PSYCLONEHOME>/src/psyclone directory where <PSYCLONEHOME> refers to the location where you download or clone PSyclone (Getting Going).

In the tests/test\_files/dynamo0p3 directory the majority of examples start with testkern. The exceptions are: simple.f90, ru\_kernel\_mod.f90 and matrix\_vector\_mod.F90. The following test kernels can be used to generate kernel stub code (running stub generation from the <PSYCLONEHOME>/src/psyclone directory):

```
tests/test_files/dynamo0p3/testkern_chi_2.F90
tests/test_files/dynamo0p3/testkern_chi.F90
tests/test_files/dynamo0p3/testkern_operator_mod.f90
tests/test_files/dynamo0p3/testkern_operator_nofield_mod.f90
tests/test_files/dynamo0p3/testkern_orientation.F90
tests/test_files/dynamo0p3/testkern_operator_orient_mod.f90
tests/test_files/dynamo0p3/ru_kernel_mod.f90
tests/test_files/dynamo0p3/simple.f90
```

# 13.5 Example

A simple single field example of a kernel that can be used as input for the stub generator is found in tests/test\_files/dynamo0p3/simple.f90 and is shown below:

**Note:** The module name simple\_mod and the type name simple\_type share the same root simple and have the extensions \_mod and \_type respectively. This is a convention in Dynamo0.3 and is required by the kernel stub generator as it needs to determine the name of the type containing the metadata and infers this by reading the module name. If this rule is not followed the kernel stub generator will return with an error message (see Section *Errors*).

**Note:** Whilst strictly the kernel stub generator only requires the Kernel metadata to generate the appropriate stub code, the parser that the generator relies on currently requires a dummy kernel subroutine to exist.

If we run the kernel stub generator on the simple.f90 example:

```
> genkernelstub tests/test_files/dynamo0p3/simple.f90
```

we get the following kernel stub output:

```
MODULE simple_mod

IMPLICIT NONE

CONTAINS

SUBROUTINE simple_code(nlayers, field_1_w1, ndf_w1, undf_w1, map_w1)

USE constants_mod, ONLY: r_def

IMPLICIT NONE

INTEGER, intent(in) :: nlayers

INTEGER, intent(in) :: ndf_w1

INTEGER, intent(in) :: undf_w1

REAL(KIND=r_def), intent(out), dimension(undf_w1) :: field_1_w1
```

(continues on next page)

13.5. Example 115

(continued from previous page)

```
INTEGER, intent(in), dimension(ndf_w1) :: map_w1
END SUBROUTINE simple_code
END MODULE simple_mod
```

The subroutine content can then be copied into the required module, used as the basis for a new module, or checked with an existing subroutine for correctness.

**Note:** The output does not currently conform to Met Office coding standards so must be modified accordingly.

**Note:** The code will not compile without a) providing the constants\_mod, argument\_mod and kernel\_mod modules in the compiler include path and b) adding in code that writes to any arguments declared as intent out or inout. For a quick check, the USE declaration and KIND declarations can be removed and the field\_1\_w1 array can be initialised with some value in the subroutine. At this point the Kernel should compile successfully.

**Note:** Whilst there is only one field declared in the metadata there are 5 arguments to the Kernel. The first argument nlayers specifies the number of layers in a column for a field. The second argument is the array associated with the field. The field array is dimensioned as the number of unique degrees of freedom (undf) which is also passed into the kernel (the fourth argument). The naming convention is to call each field a field, followed by its position in the (algorithm) argument list (which is reflected in the metadata ordering). The third argument is the number of degrees of freedom for the particular column and is used to dimension the final argument which is the degrees of freedom map (dofmap) which indicates the location of the required values in the field array. The naming convention for the dofmap, undf and ndf is to append the name with the space that it is associated with.

We now take a look at a more complicated example. The metadata in this example is the same as an actual Dynamo kernel, however the subroutine content and various comments have been removed. The metadata specifies that there are four fields passed by the algorithm layer, the fourth of which is a vector field of size three. All three of the spaces require a basis function and the w0 and w2 function spaces additionally require a differential basis function. The content of the Kernel is given below.

```
module ru_kernel_mod
type, public, extends(kernel_type) :: ru_kernel_type
 private
 type(arg_type) :: meta_args(6) = (/
       arg_type(GH_FIELD, GH_INC, W2),
                                                                        δ
       arg_type(GH_FIELD, GH_READ, W3),
       arg_type(GH_INTEGER, GH_READ),
       arg_type(GH_REAL,
                          GH_READ),
       arg_type(GH_FIELD,
                           GH_READ, WO),
       arg_type(GH_FIELD*3, GH_READ, W0)
 type(func_type) :: meta_funcs(3) = (/
       func_type(W2, GH_BASIS, GH_DIFF_BASIS),
                                                                        δ
       func_type(W3, GH_BASIS),
                                                                        S.
       func_type(W0, GH_BASIS, GH_DIFF_BASIS)
 integer :: iterates_over = CELLS
 integer :: gh_shape = gh_quadrature_XYoZ
contains
 procedure, nopass :: ru_code
end type
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
contains
subroutine ru_code()
end subroutine ru_code
end module ru_kernel_mod
```

If we run the kernel stub generator on this example:

```
> genkernelstub tests/test_files/dynamo0p3/ru_kernel_mod.f90
```

#### we obtain the following output:

```
MODULE ru_mod
 IMPLICIT NONE
 CONTAINS
 SUBROUTINE ru_code(nlayers, field_1_w2, field_2_w3, iscalar_3, rscalar_4, field_5_
\rightarroww0, field_6_w0_v1, field_6_w0_v2, field_6_w0_v3, ndf_w2, undf_w2, map_w2, basis_w2,_
→diff_basis_w2, ndf_w3, undf_w3, map_w3, basis_w3, ndf_w0, undf_w0, map_w0, basis_w0,
→ diff_basis_w0, np_xy, np_z, weights_xy, weights_z)
   USE constants_mod, ONLY: r_def
   IMPLICIT NONE
    INTEGER, intent(in) :: nlayers
   INTEGER, intent(in) :: ndf_w2
    INTEGER, intent(in) :: undf_w2
    INTEGER, intent(in) :: ndf_w3
    INTEGER, intent(in) :: undf_w3
    INTEGER, intent(in) :: ndf_w0
    INTEGER, intent(in) :: undf_w0
    REAL(KIND=r_def), intent(inout), dimension(undf_w2) :: field_1_w2
   REAL(KIND=r_def), intent(in), dimension(undf_w3) :: field_2_w3
    INTEGER, intent(in) :: iscalar_3
   REAL(KIND=r_def), intent(in) :: rscalar_4
   REAL(KIND=r_def), intent(in), dimension(undf_w0) :: field_5_w0
   REAL(KIND=r_def), intent(in), dimension(undf_w0) :: field_6_w0_v1
   REAL(KIND=r_def), intent(in), dimension(undf_w0) :: field_6_w0_v2
   REAL(KIND=r_def), intent(in), dimension(undf_w0) :: field_6_w0_v3
   INTEGER, intent(in), dimension(ndf_w2) :: map_w2
   REAL(KIND=r_def), intent(in), dimension(3,ndf_w2,np_xy,np_z) :: basis_w2
   REAL(KIND=r_def), intent(in), dimension(1,ndf_w2,np_xy,np_z) :: diff_basis_w2
    INTEGER, intent(in), dimension(ndf_w3) :: map_w3
    REAL(KIND=r_def), intent(in), dimension(1,ndf_w3,np_xy,np_z) :: basis_w3
    INTEGER, intent(in), dimension(ndf_w0) :: map_w0
   REAL(KIND=r_def), intent(in), dimension(1,ndf_w0,np_xy,np_z) :: basis_w0
   REAL(KIND=r_def), intent(in), dimension(3,ndf_w0,np_xy,np_z) :: diff_basis_w0
    INTEGER, intent(in) :: np_xy, np_z
   REAL(KIND=r\_def), intent(in), dimension(np_xy) :: weights_xy
   REAL(KIND=r_def), intent(in), dimension(np_z) :: weights_z
 END SUBROUTINE ru_code
END MODULE ru_mod
```

The above example demonstrates that the argument list can get quite complex. Rather than going through an explanation of each argument you are referred to Section *Rules* for more details on the rules for argument types and argument ordering. Regarding naming conventions for arguments you can see that the arrays associated with the fields are labelled as 1-6 depending on their position in the metadata. For a vector field, each vector results in a different array. These are distinguished by appending \_vx where x is the number of the vector.

The introduction of stencil operations on field arguments futher complicates the argument list of a kernel. An example

13.5. Example 117

of the use of the stub generator for a kernel that performs stencil operations is provided in examples/dynamo/eq5.

```
> genkernelstub ../../examples/dynamo/eg5/conservative_flux_kernel_mod.F90
```

# 13.6 Errors

The stub generator has been written to provide useful errors if mistakes are found. If you run the generator and it does not produce a useful error - and in particular if it produces a stack trace - please contact the PSyclone developers.

The following tests do not produce stub kernel code either because they are invalid or because they contain functionality that is not supported in the stub generator.

```
tests/test_files/dynamo0p3/matrix_vector_mod.F90
tests/test_files/dynamo0p3/testkern_any_space_1_mod.f90
tests/test_files/dynamo0p3/testkern_any_space_4_mod.f90
tests/test_files/dynamo0p3/testkern_invalid_fortran.F90
tests/test_files/dynamo0p3/testkern_short_name.F90
tests/test_files/dynamo0p3/testkern_no_datatype.F90
tests/test_files/dynamo0p3/testkern.F90
tests/test_files/dynamo0p3/testkern_qr.F90
```

testkern\_invalid\_fortran.F90, testkern\_no\_datatype.F90, testkern\_short\_name.F90, testkern.F90 and matrix\_vector\_mod.F90 are designed to be invalid for PSyclone testing purposes and should produce appropriate errors. For example:

```
> genkernelstub tests/test_files/dynamo0p3/testkern_invalid_fortran.F90 Error: 'Parse Error: Code appears to be invalid Fortran'
```

any\_space is not currently supported in the stub generator so testkern\_any\_space\_1\_mod.f90 and testkern\_any\_space\_4\_mod.f90 should fail with appropriate warnings because of that. For example:

```
> genkernelstub tests/test_files/dynamo0p3/testkern_any_space_1_mod.f90
Error: "Generation Error: Unsupported space for basis function, expecting one of ['w3', 'wtheta', 'w2v', 'w0', 'w1', 'w2', 'w2h', 'any_w2'] but found 'any_space_1'"
```

As noted above, if the Dynamo0.3 naming convention for module and type names is not followed, the stub generator will return with an error message. For example:

```
> genkernelstub tests/test_files/dynamo0p3/testkern.F90
Error: "Parse Error: Error, module name 'testkern' does not have
'_mod' as an extension. This convention is assumed."
```

**CHAPTER** 

# **FOURTEEN**

# LINE LENGTH

By default PSyclone will generate fortran code with no consideration of fortran line length limits. As the line length limit for free-form fortran is 132 characters, the code that is output may be non-conformant.

Line length is not an issue for many compilers as they allow compiler flags to be set which allow lines longer than the fortran standard. However this is not the case for all compilers.

PSyclone therefore supports the wrapping of lines within the 132 character limit. The next two sections discuss how this is done when scripting and when working interactively respectively.

# 14.1 Script

The psyclone script provides the -l option to wrap lines. Please see the Fortran line length section for more details.

# 14.2 Interactive

When using PSyclone interactively the line lengths of the input algorithm and Kernel files can be checked by setting the psyclone.parse.algorithm.parse() function's "line length" argument to "True".

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> ast, info = parse("argspec.F90", line_length=True)
```

Similarly the "line\_length" argument can be set to "True" if calling the generator.generate() function. This function simply passes this argument on to the psyclone.parse.algorithm.parse() function.

```
>>> from psyclone.generator import generate
>>> alg, psy = generate("argspec.F90", line_length=True)
```

Line wrapping is performed as a post processing step, i.e. after the code has been generated. This is done by an instance of the line\_length.FortLineLength class. For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.generator import generate
>>> from psyclone.line_length import FortLineLength
>>> psy, alg = generate("algspec.f90", line_length=True)
>>> line_length = FortLineLength()
>>> psy_str = line_length.process(str(psy))
>>> print psy_str
>>> alg_str = line_length.process(str(alg))
>>> print alg_str
```

# 14.3 Limitations

The line\_length.FortLineLength class is only partially aware of fortran syntax. This awareness is required so that appropriate continuation characters can be used (for example & at the end of a line and  $! \circ mp$  at the start of a line for OpenMP directives, & at the end of a line for statements and & at the end of a line and & at the beginning of a line for strings).

Whilst statements only require an & at the end of the line when line wrapping with free-form fortran they may optionally also have an & at the beginning of the subsequent line. In contrast, when splitting a string over multiple lines an & is required at both locations. Therefore an instance of the line\_length.FortLineLength class will always add & at the beginning of a continuation line for a statement, in case the line is split within a string.

One known situation that could cause an instance of the <code>line\_length.FortLineLength</code> class to fail is when an inline comment is used at the end of a line to make it longer than the 132 character limit. Whilst PSyclone does not generate such code for the PSy-layer, this might occur in Algorithm-layer code, even if the Algorithm-layer code conforms to the 132 line length limit. The reason for this is that PSyclone's internal parser concatenates lines together, thus a long line correctly split with continuation characters in the Algorithm-layer becomes a line that needs to be split by an instance of the <code>line\_length.FortLineLength</code> class.

**CHAPTER** 

# **FIFTEEN**

# **FORTRAN NAMING CONVENTIONS**

There is a convention in the kernel code for the Dynamo0.3 and GOcean1.0 APIs that if the name of the operation being performed is <name> then a kernel file is <name>  $_{mod}$ . [fF90], the name of the module inside the kernel file is <name>  $_{mod}$ , the name of the kernel metadata in the module is <name>  $_{type}$  and the name of the kernel subroutine in the module is <name>  $_{type}$  and the name of the kernel subroutine in the module is <name>  $_{type}$ .

PSyclone itself does not rely on this convention apart from in the stub generator (see the *Stub Generation* Section) where the name of the metadata to be parsed is determined from the module name.

**CHAPTER** 

## SIXTEEN

**API** 

# 16.1 The generator module

This module provides the PSyclone 'main' routine which is intended to be driven from the bin/psyclone executable script. 'main' takes an algorithm file as input and produces modified algorithm code and generated PSy code. A function, 'generate', is also provided which has the same functionality as 'main' but can be called from within another Python program.

Takes a PSyclone algorithm specification as input and outputs the associated generated algorithm and psy codes suitable for compiling with the specified kernel(s) and support infrastructure. Uses the parse.algorithm.parse() function to parse the algorithm specification, the psyGen.PSy class to generate the PSy code and the alg\_gen.Alg class to generate the modified algorithm code.

#### **Parameters**

- **filename** (str) The file containing the algorithm specification.
- **kernel\_path** (*str*) The directory from which to recursively search for the files containing the kernel source (if different from the location of the algorithm specification).
- **script\_name** (*str*) A script file that can apply optimisations to the PSy layer (can be a path to a file or a filename that relies on the PYTHONPATH to find the module).
- line\_length (bool) A logical flag specifying whether we care about line lengths being longer than 132 characters. If so, the input (algorithm and kernel) code is checked to make sure that it conforms. The default is False.
- **distributed\_memory** (bool) A logical flag specifying whether to generate distributed memory code. The default is set in the config.py file.
- **kern\_out\_path** (*str*) Directory to which to write transformed kernel code.
- **kern\_naming** (bool) the scheme to use when re-naming transformed kernels.

**Returns** 2-tuple containing fparser1 ASTs for the algorithm code and the psy code.

```
Return type (fparser.one.block_statements.BeginSource, block_statements.Module) fparser.one.
```

#### Raises

- **IOError** if the filename or search path do not exist
- **GenerationError** if an invalid API is specified.
- GenerationError if an invalid kernel-renaming scheme is specified.

For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.generator import generate
>>> alg, psy = generate("algspec.f90")
>>> alg, psy = generate("algspec.f90", kernel_path="src/kernels")
>>> alg, psy = generate("algspec.f90", script_name="optimise.py")
>>> alg, psy = generate("algspec.f90", line_length=True)
>>> alg, psy = generate("algspec.f90", distributed_memory=False)
```

# 16.2 The parse module

Module that uses the Fortran parser fparser2 to parse PSyclone-conformant Algorithm code.

Takes a PSyclone conformant algorithm file as input and outputs a parse tree of the code contained therein and an object containing information about the 'invoke' calls in the algorithm file and any associated kernels within the invoke calls.

#### **Parameters**

- $alg_filename(str)$  The file containing the algorithm specification.
- api (str) The PSyclone API to use when parsing the code.
- **invoke\_name** (str) The expected name of the invocation calls in the algorithm code.
- **kernel\_path** (*str*) The path to search for kernel source files (if different from the location of the algorithm source).
- line\_length (bool) A logical flag specifying whether we care about line lengths being longer than 132 characters. If so, the input (algorithm and kernel) code is checked to make sure that it conforms and an error raised if not. The default is False.

**Returns** 2-tuple consisting of the fparser2 parse tree of the Algorithm file and an object holding details of the invokes found.

```
Return type (fparser.two.Fortran2003.Program, psyclone.parse.FileInfo)
```

For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> ast, info = parse("alg.f90")
```

# 16.3 The transformations module

This module provides the various transformations that can be applied to PSyIR nodes. There are both general and API-specific transformation classes in this module where the latter typically apply API-specific checks before calling the base class for the actual transformation.

```
class psyclone.transformations.ACCDataTrans
```

Add an OpenACC data region around a list of nodes in the PSyIR. COPYIN, COPYOUT and COPY clauses are added as required.

For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> api = "NEMO"
>>> filename = "tra_adv.F90"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse(filename, api=api)
>>> psy = PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)
>>>
>>> from psyclone.transformations import ACCDataTrans
>>> dtrans = ACCDataTrans()
>>>
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>> kernels = schedule.children[0].children[0].children[0:-1]
>>> # Enclose the kernels
>>> new_sched, _ = dtrans.apply(kernels)
```

## apply (node\_list)

Put the supplied list of nodes within an OpenACC data region.

**Parameters node\_list** (list of psyclone.psyGen.Node) - The list of PSyIR nodes to enclose in the data region.

**Returns** (transformed schedule, memento of transformation)

**Return type** 2-tuple of (psyclone.psyGen.Schedule, psyclone.undoredo. Memento).

#### name

**Returns** the name of this transformation.

Return type str

psyGen = <module 'psyclone.psyGen' from '/home/kbc59144/Projects/GungHo/PSyclone/src/p
class psyclone.transformations.ACCEnterDataTrans</pre>

Adds an OpenACC "enter data" directive to a Schedule. For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> api = "gocean1.0"
>>> filename = "nemolite2d_alg.f90"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse(filename, api=api, invoke_name="invoke")
>>> psy = PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)
>>>
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import TransInfo
>>> t = TransInfo()
>>> dtrans = t.get_trans_name('ACCEnterDataTrans')
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>>
>>> # Add an enter-data directive
>>> newschedule, _ = dtrans.apply(schedule)
>>> newschedule.view()
```

## apply (sched)

Adds an OpenACC "enter data" directive to the invoke associated with the supplied Schedule. Any fields accessed by OpenACC kernels within this schedule will be added to this data region in order to ensure they remain on the target device.

Parameters sched (sub-class of psyclone.psyGen.Schedule.) - Schedule to which to add an "enter data" directive.

**Returns** Tuple of the modified schedule and a record of the transformation.

Return type (psyclone.psyGen.Schedule, psyclone.undoredo.Memento)

name

**Returns** the name of this transformation.

Return type str

```
class psyclone.transformations.ACCKernelsTrans
```

Enclose a sub-set of nodes from a Schedule within an OpenACC kernels region (i.e. within "!\$acc kernels" ... "!\$acc end kernels" directives). Currently only supported for the NEMO API.

For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> api = "NEMO"
>>> filename = "tra_adv.F90"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse(filename, api=api)
>>> psy = PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)
>>>
>>> from psyclone.transformations import ACCKernelsTrans
>>> ktrans = ACCKernelsTrans()
>>>
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>> kernels = schedule.children[0].children[0].children[0:-1]
>>> # Transform the kernel
>>> new_sched, _ = ktrans.apply(kernels)
```

## apply (node\_list, default\_present=False)

Enclose the supplied list of PSyIR nodes within an OpenACC Kernels region.

#### **Parameters**

- node\_list (list of psyclone.psyGen.Node) The list of nodes in the PSyIR to enclose.
- **default\_present** (bool) whether or not the kernels region should have the 'default present' attribute (indicating that data is already on the accelerator). When using managed memory this option should be False.

**Returns** (transformed schedule, memento of transformation)

```
Return type 2-tuple of (psyclone.psyGen.Schedule, psyclone.undoredo. Memento).
```

name

**Returns** the name of this transformation class.

Return type str

```
nemo = <module 'psyclone.nemo' from '/home/kbc59144/Projects/GungHo/PSyclone/src/psycl
psyGen = <module 'psyclone.psyGen' from '/home/kbc59144/Projects/GungHo/PSyclone/src/p</pre>
```

#### class psyclone.transformations.ACCLoopTrans

Adds an OpenACC loop directive to a loop. This directive must be within the scope of some OpenACC Parallel region (at code-generation time).

For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.parse.utils import ParseError
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory, GenerationError
>>> api = "gocean1.0"
>>> filename = "nemolite2d_alq.f90"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse(filename, api=api, invoke_name="invoke")
>>> psy = PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)
>>>
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import TransInfo
>>> t = TransInfo()
>>> ltrans = t.get_trans_name('ACCLoopTrans')
>>> rtrans = t.get_trans_name('ACCParallelTrans')
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>> new_schedule = schedule
# Apply the OpenACC Loop transformation to *every* loop
# in the schedule
>>> for child in schedule.children:
    newschedule, memento = ltrans.apply(child, reprod=True)
       schedule = newschedule
>>>
>>>
# Enclose all of these loops within a single OpenACC
# PARALLEL region
>>> rtrans.omp_schedule("dynamic,1")
>>> newschedule, memento = rtrans.apply(schedule.children)
```

## apply (node, collapse=None, independent=True, sequential=False)

Apply the ACCLoop transformation to the specified node in a GOInvokeSchedule. This node must be a Loop since this transformation corresponds to inserting a directive immediately before a loop, e.g.:

```
!$ACC LOOP
do ...
...
end do
```

At code-generation time (when psyclone.psyGen.ACCLoopDirective.gen\_code() is called), this node must be within (i.e. a child of) a PARALLEL region.

#### **Parameters**

- node (psyclone.psyGen.Loop.) the supplied node to which we will apply the Loop transformation.
- collapse (int) number of loops to collapse into single iteration space or None.
- **independent** (bool) whether to add the "independent" clause to the directive (not strictly necessary within PARALLEL regions).

```
Returns (psyclone.psyGen.GOInvokeSchedule, psyclone.undoredo. Memento)
```

#### name

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

## class psyclone.transformations.ACCParallelTrans

Create an OpenACC parallel region by inserting directives. This parallel region *must* come after an enter-data directive (see *ACCEnterDataTrans*) or within a data region (see *ACCDataTrans*). For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> api = "gocean1.0"
>>> filename = "nemolite2d_alg.f90"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse(filename, api=api, invoke_name="invoke")
>>> psy = PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)
>>>
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import TransInfo
>>> t = TransInfo()
>>> ptrans = t.get_trans_name('ACCParallelTrans')
>>> dtrans = t.get_trans_name('ACCDataTrans')
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>> # Enclose everything within a single OpenACC PARALLEL region
>>> newschedule, _ = ptrans.apply(schedule.children)
>>> # Add an enter-data directive
>>> newschedule, _ = dtrans.apply(newschedule)
>>> newschedule.view()
```

gocean1p0 = <module 'psyclone.gocean1p0' from '/home/kbc59144/Projects/GungHo/PSyclone
name</pre>

**Returns** The name of this transformation as a string.

Return type str

nemo = <module 'psyclone.nemo' from '/home/kbc59144/Projects/GungHo/PSyclone/src/psycl
psyGen = <module 'psyclone.psyGen' from '/home/kbc59144/Projects/GungHo/PSyclone/src/p
class psyclone.transformations.ACCRoutineTrans</pre>

Transform a kernel subroutine by adding a "!\$acc routine" directive (causing it to be compiled for the OpenACC accelerator device). For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> api = "gocean1.0"
>>> filename = "nemolite2d_alg.f90"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse(filename, api=api)
>>> psy = PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)
>>>
>>> from psyclone.transformations import ACCRoutineTrans
>>> rtrans = ACCRoutineTrans()
>>>
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>> kern = schedule.children[0].children[0].children[0]
>>> # Transform the kernel
>>> newkern, _ = rtrans.apply(kern)
```

#### apply (kern)

Modifies the AST of the supplied kernel so that it contains an '!\$acc routine' OpenACC directive.

Parameters kern (psyclone.psyGen.Call) - The kernel object to transform.

**Returns** (transformed kernel, memento of transformation)

Return type 2-tuple of (psyclone.psyGen.Kern, psyclone.undoredo.Memento).

**Raises** *TransformationError* – if we fail to find the subroutine corresponding to the kernel object.

#### name

**Returns** the name of this transformation class.

Return type str

## validate(kern)

Perform checks that the supplied kernel can be transformed.

Parameters kern (psyclone.psyGen.Call) – the kernel which is the target of the transformation

**Raises** *TransformationError* – if the target kernel is a built-in.

## class psyclone.transformations.ColourTrans

Apply a colouring transformation to a loop (in order to permit a subsequent parallelisation over colours). For example:

```
>>> invoke = ...
>>> schedule = invoke.schedule
>>>
>>> ctrans = ColourTrans()
>>>
>>> # Colour all of the loops
>>> for child in schedule.children:
>>> cschedule, _ = ctrans.apply(child)
>>>
>>> csched.view()
```

## apply (node)

Converts the Loop represented by node into a nested loop where the outer loop is over colours and the inner loop is over cells of that colour. :param node: The loop to transform. :type node: psyclone.psyGen.Loop:returns: Tuple of modified schedule and record of transformation:rtype: (psyclone.psyGen.Schedule, :py:class:`psyclone.undoredo.Memento)

## name

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

## class psyclone.transformations.DynamoOp3AsyncHaloExchangeTrans

Splits a synchronous halo exchange into a halo exchange start and halo exchange end. For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> api = "dynamo0.3"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse("file.f90", api=api)
>>> psy=PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>>
>>> from psyclone.transformations import Dynamo0p3AsyncHaloExchangeTrans
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
>>> trans = Dynamo0p3AsyncHaloExchangeTrans()
>>> new_schedule, memento = trans.apply(schedule.children[0])
>>> new_schedule.view()
```

#### apply (node)

Transforms a synchronous halo exchange, represented by a HaloExchange node, into an asynchronous halo exchange, represented by HaloExchangeStart and HaloExchangeEnd nodes.

Parameters node (psyclone.psygen.HaloExchange) - A synchronous haloexchange node

**Returns** Tuple of the modified schedule and a record of the transformation.

Return type (psyclone.psyGen.Schedule, psyclone.undoredo.Memento)

#### name

**Returns** the name of this transformation as a string.

Return type str

class psyclone.transformations.Dynamo0p3ColourTrans

Split a Dynamo 0.3 loop over cells into colours so that it can be parallelised. For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> import transformations
>>> import os
>>> import pytest
>>>
>>> TEST API = "dynamo0.3"
>>> _, info=parse(os.path.join(os.path.dirname(os.path.abspath(__file__))),
                 "tests", "test_files", "dynamo0p3",
>>>
                 "4.6_multikernel_invokes.f90"),
                 api=TEST_API)
>>>
>>> psy = PSyFactory (TEST_API).create(info)
>>> invoke = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0')
>>> schedule = invoke.schedule
>>> ctrans = Dynamo0p3ColourTrans()
>>> otrans = DynamoOMPParallelLoopTrans()
>>> # Colour all of the loops
>>> for child in schedule.children:
        cschedule, _ = ctrans.apply(child)
>>>
>>> # Then apply OpenMP to each of the colour loops
>>> schedule = cschedule
>>> for child in schedule.children:
>>>
        newsched, _ = otrans.apply(child.children[0])
>>>
>>> newsched.view()
```

Colouring in the Dynamo 0.3 API is subject to the following rules:

- Only kernels with an iteration space of CELLS and which modify a continuous field require colouring. Any other type of loop will cause this transformation to raise an exception.
- A kernel may have at most one field with 'INC' access

A separate colour map will be required for each field that is coloured (if an invoke contains >1 kernel call)

#### apply (node)

Performs Dynamo0.3-specific error checking and then uses the parent class to convert the Loop represented by node into a nested loop where the outer loop is over colours and the inner loop is over cells of that colour.

Parameters node (psyclone.dynamo0p3.DynLoop) - the loop to transform.

**Returns** 2-tuple of new schedule and memento of transform

```
Return type (psyclone.dynamo0p3.DynInvokeSchedule, psyclone.undoredo.Memento)
```

#### name

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

## class psyclone.transformations.Dynamo0p3KernelConstTrans

Modifies a kernel so that the number of dofs, number of layers and number of quadrature points are fixed in the kernel rather than being passed in by argument.

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> api = "dynamo0.3"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse("file.f90", api=api)
>>> psy=PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>>
>>> from psyclone.transformations import Dynamo0p3KernelConstTrans
>>> trans = Dynamo0p3KernelConstTrans()
>>> for kernel in schedule.kern_calls():
>>> new_schedule, _ = trans.apply(kernel)
>>> kernel_schedule = kernel.get_kernel_schedule()
>>> kernel_schedule.symbol_table.view()
```

apply (node, cellshape='quadrilateral', element\_order=None, number\_of\_layers=None, quadrature=False)

Transforms a kernel so that the values for the number of degrees of freedom (if a valid value for the element\_order arg is provided), the number of quadrature points (if the quadrature arg is set to True) and the number of layers (if a valid value for the number\_of\_layers arg is provided) are constant in a kernel rather than being passed in by argument.

The "cellshape", "element\_order" and "number\_of\_layers" arguments are provided to mirror the namelist values that are input into an LFRic model when it is run.

Quadrature support is currently limited to XYoZ in the transformation. In the case of XYoZ the number of quadrature points (for horizontal and vertical) are set to the element\_order + 3 in the LFRic infrastructure so their value is derived.

Parameters node (psyclone.psygen.DynKern) - A kernel node

**Returns** Tuple of the modified schedule and a record of the transformation.

Return type (psyclone.psyGen.Schedule, psyclone.undoredo.Memento)

#### name

**Returns** the name of this transformation as a string.

Return type str

```
class psyclone.transformations.Dynamo0p3OMPLoopTrans(omp schedule='static')
```

Dynamo 0.3 specific orphan OpenMP loop transformation. Adds Dynamo-specific validity checks. Actual transformation is done by base class.

```
apply (node, reprod=None)
```

Perform Dynamo 0.3 specific loop validity checks then call OMPLoopTrans.apply().

#### **Parameters**

- node (psyclone.psyGen.Node) the Node in the Schedule to check
- reprod (bool or None (default, which indicates to use the default from the config file))—if reproducible reductions should be used.

Raises TransformationError – if an OMP loop transform would create incorrect code.

#### name

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

## class psyclone.transformations.Dynamo0p3RedundantComputationTrans

This transformation allows the user to modify a loop's bounds so that redundant computation will be performed. Redundant computation can result in halo exchanges being modified, new halo exchanges being added or existing halo exchanges being removed.

- This transformation should be performed before any parallelisation transformations (e.g. for OpenMP) to the loop in question and will raise an exception if this is not the case.
- This transformation can not be applied to a loop containing a reduction and will again raise an exception
  if this is the case.
- This transformation can only be used to add redundant computation to a loop, not to remove it.
- This transformation allows a loop that is already performing redundant computation to be modified, but only if the depth is increased.

## apply (loop, depth=None)

Apply the redundant computation tranformation to the loop loop. This transformation can be applied to loops iterating over 'cells or 'dofs'. if depth is set to a value then the value will be the depth of the field's halo over which redundant computation will be performed. If depth is not set to a value then redundant computation will be performed to the full depth of the field's halo.

## **Parameters**

- loop (psyclone.psyGen.DynLoop) the loop that we are transforming
- **depth** (*int* or *None*) the depth of the stencil. Defaults to None if a depth is not provided.

#### name

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

## class psyclone.transformations.DynamoExtractRegionTrans

Dynamo0.3 API application of ExtractRegionTrans transformation to extract code into a stand-alone program. For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>>
>>> API = "dynamo0.3"
>>> FILENAME = "solver_alg.x90"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse(FILENAME, api=API)
>>> psy = PSyFactory(API, distributed_memory=False).create(invoke_info)
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>>
>>> from psyclone.transformations import DynamoExtractRegionTrans
>>> etrans = DynamoExtractRegionTrans()
>>>
>>> # Apply DynamoExtractRegionTrans transformation to selected Nodes
>>> newsched, _ = etrans.apply(schedule.children[0:3])
>>> newsched.view()
```

#### name

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

### class psyclone.transformations.DynamoLoopFuseTrans

Performs error checking before calling the apply () method of the base class in order to fuse two Dynamo loops.

#### apply (node1, node2, same\_space=False)

Fuse the two Dynamo loops represented by node1 and node2. The optional same\_space flag asserts that an unknown iteration space (i.e. any\_space) matches the other iteration space. This is set at the users own risk.

#### **Parameters**

- node1 (psyclone.dynamo0p3.DynLoop) First Loop to fuse.
- node2 (psyclone.dynamo0p3.DynLoop) Second Loop to fuse.

Returns two-tuple of modified Schedule and Memento

Return type psyclone.psyGen.Schedule, psyclone.undoredo.Memento

**Raises** *TransformationError* – if either of the supplied loops contains an inter-grid kernel.

## name

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

## class psyclone.transformations.DynamoOMPParallelLoopTrans(omp\_schedule='static')

Dynamo-specific OpenMP loop transformation. Adds Dynamo specific validity checks. Actual transformation is done by the base class.

## apply (node)

Perform Dynamo specific loop validity checks then call the apply () method of the base class.

Parameters node (psyclone.psyGen.Node) - the Node in the Schedule to check

Raises TransformationError – if the associated loop requires colouring.

#### name

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

#### class psyclone.transformations.ExtractRegionTrans

Provides a transformation to extract code represented by a subset of the Nodes in the PSyIR of a Schedule into a stand-alone program. Examples are given in descriptions of children classes DynamoExtractRegionTrans and GOceanExtractRegionTrans.

After applying the transformation the Nodes marked for extraction are children of the ExtractNode. Nodes to extract can be individual constructs within an Invoke (e.g. Loops containing a Kernel or BuiltIn call) or entire Invokes. This functionality does not support distributed memory.

#### apply (nodes)

Apply this transformation to a subset of the Nodes within a Schedule - i.e. enclose the specified Nodes in the Schedule within a single Extract region.

Parameters nodes ((list of) psyclone.psyGen.Node.) – a single Node or a list of Nodes.

**Returns** tuple of the modified Schedule and a record of the transformation.

Return type (psyclone.psyGen.Schedule, psyclone.undoredo.Memento).

**Raises** *TransformationError* – if the *nodes* argument is not of the correct type.

#### name

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

psyGen = <module 'psyclone.psyGen' from '/home/kbc59144/Projects/GungHo/PSyclone/src/p
class psyclone.transformations.GOConstLoopBoundsTrans</pre>

Switch on (or off) the use of constant loop bounds within a GOInvokeSchedule. In the absence of constant loop bounds, PSyclone will generate loops where the bounds are obtained by de-referencing a field object, e.g.:

```
DO j = my_field%grid%internal%ystart, my_field%grid%internal%ystop
```

Some compilers are able to produce more efficient code if they are provided with information on the relative trip-counts of the loops within an Invoke. With constant loop bounds switched on, PSyclone generates code like:

```
ny = my_field%grid%subdomain%internal%ystop
...
DO j = 1, ny-1
```

In practice, the application of the constant loop bounds looks something like, e.g.:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> import os
>>> TEST_API = "gocean1.0"
>>> _, info = parse(os.path.join("tests", "test_files", "gocean1p0",
                                 "single_invoke.f90"),
>>>
                    api=TEST_API)
>>> psy = PSyFactory(TEST_API).create(info)
>>> invoke = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0_compute_cu')
>>> schedule = invoke.schedule
>>>
>>> from psyclone.transformations import GOConstLoopBoundsTrans
>>> clbtrans = GOConstLoopBoundsTrans()
>>>
>>> newsched, _ = clbtrans.apply(schedule)
>>> # or, to turn off const. looop bounds:
>>> # newsched, _ = clbtrans.apply(schedule, const_bounds=False)
>>>
>>> newsched.view()
```

#### apply (node, const bounds=True)

Switches constant loop bounds on or off for all loops in a GOInvokeSchedule. Default is 'on'.

### **Parameters**

• node (psyclone.gocean1p0.GOInvokeSchedule) - The GOInvokeSchedule of which all loops will get the constant loop bounds switched on or off.

• const\_bounds (bool) - If the constant loop should be used (True) or not (False). Default is True.

#### name

Return the name of the Transformation as a string.

## class psyclone.transformations.GOLoopSwapTrans

Provides a loop-swap transformation, e.g.:

```
DO j=1, m
DO i=1, n
```

#### becomes:

```
DO i=1, n
DO j=1, m
```

This transform is used as follows:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse("shallow_alg.f90")
>>> psy = PSyFactory("gocean1.0").create(invokeInfo)
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>>
>>> from psyclone.transformations import GOLoopSwapTrans
>>> swap = GOLoopSwapTrans()
>>> new_schedule, memento = swap.apply(schedule.children[0])
>>> new_schedule.view()
```

#### apply (outer)

The argument outer must be a loop which has exactly one inner loop. This transform then swaps the outer and inner loop.

Parameters outer (psyclone.psyGen.Loop) - The node representing the outer loop.

**Returns** A tuple consisting of the new schedule, and a Memento.

**Raises** *TransformationError* – if the supplied node does not allow a loop swap to be done.

#### name

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

#### class psyclone.transformations.GOceanExtractRegionTrans

GOcean 1.0 API application of ExtractRegionTrans transformation to extract code into a stand-alone program. For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>>
>>> API = "gocean1.0"
>>> FILENAME = "shallow_alg.f90"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse(FILENAME, api=API)
>>> psy = PSyFactory(API, distributed_memory=False).create(invoke_info)
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>>
>>> from psyclone.transformations import GOceanExtractRegionTrans
>>> etrans = GOceanExtractRegionTrans()
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
>>>
>>> # Apply GOceanExtractRegionTrans transformation to selected Nodes
>>> newsched, _ = etrans.apply(schedule.children[0])
>>> newsched.view()
```

#### name

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

#### class psyclone.transformations.GOceanLoopFuseTrans

Performs error checking (that the loops are over the same grid-point type) before calling the LoopFuseTrans.apply() method of the base class in order to fuse two GOcean loops.

## apply (node1, node2)

Fuse the two GOcean loops represented by node1 and node2.

#### **Parameters**

- node1 (psyclone.gocean1p0.GOLoop) A node representing a GOLoop.
- node2 (psyclone.gocean1p0.GOLoop) A node representing a GOLoop.

**Raises** *TransformationError* – if the supplied node2 can not be fused, e.g. not all nodes are loops, don't have the same parent, are not next to each other or have different iteration spaces.

#### name

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

## class psyclone.transformations.GOceanOMPLoopTrans(omp\_schedule='static')

GOcean-specific orphan OpenMP loop transformation. Adds GOcean specific validity checks (that the node is either an inner or outer Loop). Actual transformation is done by base class.

**Parameters** omp\_schedule - The omp schedule to be created. Must be one of 'runtime', 'static', 'dynamic', 'guided' or 'auto'.

#### apply (node)

Perform GOcean specific loop validity checks then call <code>OMPLoopTrans.apply()</code>.

Parameters node (psyclone.psyGen.Loop.) - The loop to parallelise using OMP Do.

### name

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

## class psyclone.transformations.GOceanOMPParallelLoopTrans(omp\_schedule='static')

GOcean specific OpenMP Do loop transformation. Adds GOcean specific validity checks (that supplied Loop is an inner or outer loop). Actual transformation is done by base class.

**Parameters** omp\_schedule - The omp schedule to be created. Must be one of 'runtime', 'static', 'dynamic', 'guided' or 'auto'.

### apply (node)

Perform GOcean-specific loop validity checks then call OMPParallelLoopTrans.apply().

Parameters node (psyclone.psyGen.Loop) - A Loop node from an AST.

**Raises** *TransformationError* – if the supplied node is not an inner or outer loop.

#### name

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

## class psyclone.transformations.KernelModuleInlineTrans

Switches on, or switches off, the inlining of a Kernel subroutine into the PSy layer module. For example:

```
>>> invoke = ...
>>> schedule = invoke.schedule
>>>
>> inline_trans = KernelModuleInlineTrans()
>>>
>>> ischedule, _ = inline_trans.apply(schedule.children[0].children[0])
>>> ischedule.view()
```

**Warning:** For this transformation to work correctly, the Kernel subroutine must only use data that is passed in by argument, declared locally or included via use association within the subroutine. Two examples where in-lining will not work correctly are:

- 1. A variable is declared within the module that contains the Kernel subroutine and is then accessed within that Kernel:
- 2. A variable is included via use association at the module level and accessed within the Kernel subroutine

There are currently no checks that these rules are being followed when in-lining so the onus is on the user to ensure correctness.

### apply (node, inline=True)

Checks that the node is of the correct type (a Kernel) then marks the Kernel to be inlined, or not, depending on the value of the inline argument. If the inline argument is not passed the Kernel is marked to be inlined.

#### name

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

### validate(node, inline)

Check that the supplied kernel is eligible to be module inlined.

### **Parameters**

- node (sub-class of psyclone.psyGen.Node) the node in the PSyIR that is to be module inlined.
- **inline** (bool) whether or not the kernel is to be inlined.

#### Raises

- **TransformationError** if the supplied node is not a kernel.
- *TransformationError* if the supplied kernel has itself been transformed (Issue #229).

### class psyclone.transformations.LoopFuseTrans

Provides a loop-fuse transformation. For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> ast,invokeInfo=parse("dynamo.F90")
>>> psy=PSyFactory("dynamo0.1").create(invokeInfo)
>>> schedule=psy.invokes.get('invoke_v3_kernel_type').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>>
>>> from psyclone.transformations import LoopFuseTrans
>>> trans=LoopFuseTrans()
>>> new_schedule,memento=trans.apply(schedule.children[0],
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
schedule.children[1])
>>> new_schedule.view()
```

#### apply (node1, node2)

Fuse the loops represented by node1 and node2.

#### name

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

### class psyclone.transformations.MoveTrans

Provides a transformation to move a node in the tree. For example:

Nodes may only be moved to a new location with the same parent and must not break any dependencies otherwise an exception is raised.

```
apply (node, location, position='before')
```

Move the node represented by node before location location (which is also a node) by default and after if the optional *position* argument is set to 'after'. An exception is raised if the move is invalid.

#### name

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

### class psyclone.transformations.NemoExplicitLoopTrans

Transforms the outermost array slice in an implicit loop in a NEMOInvokeSchedule into an explicit loop. For example, if "implicit\_loop.f90" contained:

```
my_array(:, :, :) = 1.0
```

then doing:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> api = "nemo"
>>> filename = "implicit_loop.f90"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse(filename, api=api)
>>> psy = PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)
>>>
>>> from psyclone.transformations import NemoExplicitLoopTrans
>>> rtrans = NemoExplicitLoopTrans()
>>>
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> loop = schedule.children[0]
>>> newloop, _ = rtrans.apply(loop)
```

138 Chapter 16. API

will create a new NemoLoop object for an explicit loop over levels (the outermost slice) that then contains an implicit loop:

```
DO jk = 1, jpk

my_array(:, :, jk) = 1.0

END DO
```

Subsequently applying rtrans to newloop will create:

```
DO jk = 1, jpk
DO jj = 1, jpj
my_array(:, jj, jk) = 1.0
END DO
END DO
```

### apply (loop)

Transform the outermost array slice in the supplied implicit loop into an explicit loop.

Parameters loop (psyclone.nemo.NemoImplicitLoop) - the NemoImplicitLoop to transform.

**Returns** a new PSyIR loop object and a memento of the transformation.

Return type (psyclone.nemo.NemoLoop, psyclone.undoredo.Memento)

#### Raises

- NotImplementedError if the array slice has explicit bounds.
- **TransformationError** if an array slice is not in dimensions 1-3 of the array.

#### name

**Returns** the name of this transformation class.

Return type str

#### validate(loop)

Check that the supplied loop is a valid target for this transformation.

Parameters loop (psyclone.nemo.NemoImplicitLoop) - the loop node to validate.

Raises TransformationError – if the supplied loop is not a NemoImplicitLoop.

## $\textbf{class} \ \texttt{psyclone.trans} for \texttt{mations.OCLTrans}$

Switches on/off the generation of an OpenCL PSy layer for a given InvokeSchedule. For example:

```
>>> invoke = ...
>>> schedule = invoke.schedule
>>>
>> ocl_trans = OCLTrans()
>>> new_sched, _ = ocl_trans.apply(schedule)
```

### apply (sched, opencl=True)

Apply the OpenCL transformation to the supplied GOInvokeSchedule. This causes PSyclone to generate an OpenCL version of the corresponding PSy-layer routine. The generated code makes use of the FortCL library (https://github.com/stfc/FortCL) in order to manage the OpenCL device directly from Fortran.

#### **Parameters**

- sched (psyclone.psyGen.GOInvokeSchedule) InvokeSchedule to transform.
- opencl (bool) whether or not to enable OpenCL generation.

#### name

**Returns** the name of this transformation.

Return type str

```
class psyclone.transformations.OMPLoopTrans(omp_schedule='static')
```

Adds an orphaned OpenMP directive to a loop. i.e. the directive must be inside the scope of some other OMP Parallel REGION. This condition is tested at code-generation time. The optional 'reprod' argument in the apply method decides whether standard OpenMP reduction support is to be used (which is not reproducible) or whether a manual reproducible reproduction is to be used.

**Parameters** omp\_schedule (str) - The OpenMP schedule to use.

For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.parse.utils import ParseError
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory, GenerationError
>>> api = "gocean1.0"
>>> filename = "nemolite2d_alg.f90"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse(filename, api=api, invoke_name="invoke")
>>> psy = PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)
>>> print psy.invokes.names
>>>
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import TransInfo
>>> t = TransInfo()
>>> ltrans = t.get_trans_name('OMPLoopTrans')
>>> rtrans = t.get_trans_name('OMPParallelTrans')
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>> new_schedule = schedule
# Apply the OpenMP Loop transformation to *every* loop
# in the schedule
>>> for child in schedule.children:
      newschedule, memento = ltrans.apply(child, reprod=True)
>>>
       schedule = newschedule
>>>
# Enclose all of these loops within a single OpenMP
# PARALLEL region
>>> rtrans.omp_schedule("dynamic,1")
>>> newschedule, memento = rtrans.apply(schedule.children)
>>>
>>>
```

## apply (node, reprod=None)

Apply the OMPLoopTrans transformation to the specified node in a Schedule. This node must be a Loop since this transformation corresponds to wrapping the generated code with directives like so:

```
!$OMP DO
do ...
...
end do
!$OMP END DO
```

At code-generation time (when <code>OMPLoopDirective.gen\_code()</code> is called), this node must be within (i.e. a child of) an OpenMP PARALLEL region.

140 Chapter 16. API

The optional reprod argument will cause a reproducible reduction to be generated if it is set to True, otherwise the default value (as read from the psyclone.cfg file) will be used. Note, reproducible in this case means obtaining the same results with the same number of OpenMP threads, not for different numbers of OpenMP threads.

### **Parameters**

- node (psyclone.psyGen.Node) the supplied node to which we will apply the OMPLoopTrans transformation
- **reprod** (Boolean or None) optional argument to determine whether to generate reproducible OpenMP reductions (True) or not (False). The default value is None which will cause PSyclone to look up a default value

Returns (psyclone.psyGen.Schedule, psyclone.undoredo.Memento)

#### name

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

### omp\_schedule

Returns the OpenMP schedule that will be specified by this transformation. The default schedule is 'static'.

```
class psyclone.transformations.OMPParallelLoopTrans (omp_schedule='static') Adds an OpenMP PARALLEL DO directive to a loop.
```

For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse("dynamo.F90")
>>> psy = PSyFactory("dynamo0.1").create(invokeInfo)
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_v3_kernel_type').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>>
>>> from psyclone.transformations import OMPParallelLoopTrans
>>> trans = OMPParallelLoopTrans()
>>> new_schedule, memento = trans.apply(schedule.children[0])
>>> new_schedule.view()
```

### apply (node)

Apply an OMPParallelLoop Transformation to the supplied node (which must be a Loop). In the generated code this corresponds to wrapping the Loop with directives:

```
!$OMP PARALLEL DO ...
do ...
end do
!$OMP END PARALLEL DO
```

**Parameters node** (psyclone.f2pygen.DoGen) – the node (loop) to which to apply the transformation.

Returns Two-tuple of transformed schedule and a record of the transformation.

```
Return type (psyclone.psyGen.Schedule, :py:class:`psyclone.undoredo.Memento)
```

#### name

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

class psyclone.transformations.OMPParallelTrans

Create an OpenMP PARALLEL region by inserting directives. For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.parse.utils import ParseError
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory, GenerationError
>>> api = "gocean1.0"
>>> filename = "nemolite2d_alg.f90"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse(filename, api=api, invoke_name="invoke")
>>> psy = PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import TransInfo
>>> t = TransInfo()
>>> ltrans = t.get_trans_name('GOceanOMPLoopTrans')
>>> rtrans = t.get_trans_name('OMPParallelTrans')
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>> new_schedule = schedule
>>>
>>> # Apply the OpenMP Loop transformation to *every* loop
>>> # in the schedule
>>> for child in schedule.children:
       newschedule, memento = ltrans.apply(child)
        schedule = newschedule
>>>
>>>
>>> # Enclose all of these loops within a single OpenMP
>>> # PARALLEL region
>>> newschedule, _ = rtrans.apply(schedule.children)
>>> newschedule.view()
```

#### name

**Returns** The name of this transformation as a string.

Return type str

```
psyGen = <module 'psyclone.psyGen' from '/home/kbc59144/Projects/GungHo/PSyclone/src/p
class psyclone.transformations.ParallelLoopTrans</pre>
```

Adds an orphaned directive to a loop indicating that it should be parallelised. i.e. the directive must be inside the scope of some other Parallel REGION. This condition is tested at code-generation time.

```
apply (node, collapse=None)
```

Apply the Loop transformation to the specified node in a Schedule. This node must be a Loop since this transformation corresponds to wrapping the generated code with directives, e.g. for OpenMP:

```
!$OMP DO

do ...

end do
!$OMP END DO
```

At code-generation time (when gen\_code() is called), this node must be within (i.e. a child of) a PARAL-LEL region.

## **Parameters**

• node (psyclone.psyGen.Node.) - the supplied node to which we will apply the Loop transformation.

142 Chapter 16. API

• **collapse** (*int*) – number of loops to collapse into single iteration space or None.

Returns (psyclone.psyGen.Schedule, psyclone.undoredo.Memento)

name

**Returns** the name of this transformation as a string.

Return type str

#### class psyclone.transformations.ParallelRegionTrans

Base class for transformations that create a parallel region.

### apply (nodes)

Apply this transformation to a subset of the nodes within a schedule - i.e. enclose the specified Loops in the schedule within a single parallel region.

Parameters nodes ((list of) psyclone.psyGen.Node.) - a single Node or a list of Nodes.

**Raises** *TransformationError* – if the nodes argument is not of the correct type.

name

Returns the name of this transformation as a string.

### class psyclone.transformations.ProfileRegionTrans

Create a profile region around a list of statements. For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> from psyclone.parse.utils import ParseError
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory, GenerationError
>>> api = "gocean1.0"
>>> filename = "nemolite2d_alq.f90"
>>> ast, invokeInfo = parse(filename, api=api, invoke_name="invoke")
>>> psy = PSyFactory(api).create(invokeInfo)
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import TransInfo
>>> t = TransInfo()
>>> p_trans = t.get_trans_name('ProfileRegionTrans')
>>> schedule = psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
>>> schedule.view()
>>>
>>> # Enclose all children within a single profile region
>>> newschedule, _ = p_trans.apply(schedule.children)
>>> newschedule.view()
```

### apply (nodes)

Apply this transformation to a subset of the nodes within a schedule - i.e. enclose the specified Nodes in the schedule within a single profiler region.

**Parameters nodes** (psyclone.psygen.Node or list of psyclone.psygen.Node.) – Can be a single node or a list of nodes.

### name

Returns the name of this transformation as a string

```
profiler = <module 'psyclone.profiler' from '/home/kbc59144/Projects/GungHo/PSyclone/s
psyGen = <module 'psyclone.psyGen' from '/home/kbc59144/Projects/GungHo/PSyclone/src/p</pre>
```

### class psyclone.transformations.RegionTrans

This abstract class is a base class for all transformations that act on a list of nodes. It gives access to a \_validate function that makes sure that the nodes in the list are in the same order as in the original AST, no node is

duplicated, and that all nodes have the same parent. We also check that all nodes to be enclosed are valid for this transformation - this requires that the sub-class populate the *valid\_node\_types* tuple.

```
exception psyclone.transformations.TransformationError(value)
```

Provides a PSyclone-specific error class for errors found during code transformation operations.

```
psyclone.transformations.check_intergrid(node)
```

Utility function to check that the supplied node does not have an intergrid kernel as a child.

This is used to ensure that we reject any attempt to apply transformations to loops containing inter-grid kernels. (This restriction will be lifted in Issue #134 and this routine can then be removed.)

# TODO remove this routine once #134 is complete.

```
Parameters node (psyGen.Node) – The PSyIR node to check.
```

Raises TransformationError - if the supplied node has an inter-grid kernel as a child

## 16.4 The psyGen module

This module provides generic support for PSyclone's PSy code optimisation and generation. The classes in this method need to be specialised for a particular API and implementation.

```
class psyclone.psyGen.PSy(invoke_info)
```

Base class to help manage and generate PSy code for a single algorithm file. Takes the invocation information output from the function parse.algorithm.parse() as its input and stores this in a way suitable for optimisation and code generation.

**Parameters invoke\_info** (psyclone.parse.algorithm.FileInfo) – An object containing the required invocation information for code optimisation and generation. Produced by the function parse.algorithm.parse().

For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.parse.algorithm import parse
>>> ast, info = parse("argspec.F90")
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSyFactory
>>> api = "..."
>>> psy = PSyFactory(api).create(info)
>>> print(psy.gen)
```

### gen

Abstract base class for code generation function. :param parent: the parent of this Node in the PSyIR. :type parent: psyclone.psyGen.Node.

```
inline (module)
```

inline all kernel subroutines into the module that are marked for inlining. Avoid inlining the same kernel more than once.

# 16.5 The alg\_gen module

This module provides the Alg class and supporting exception-handling to translate the original algorithm file into one that can be compiled and linked with the generated PSy code.

```
class psyclone.alg_gen.Alg(parse_tree, psy, invoke_name='invoke')
```

Generate a modified algorithm code for a single algorithm specification. Takes the parse tree of the algorithm specification output from the function <code>psyclone.parse.algorithm.parse()</code> and an instance of the

144 Chapter 16. API

psyGen.PSy class as input. The latter allows consistent names to be generated between the algorithm (callng) and psy (callee) layers.

### For example:

```
>>> from psyclone.algorithm.parse import parse
>>> parse_tree, info = parse("argspec.F90")
>>> from psyclone.psyGen import PSy
>>> psy = PSy(info)
>>> from psyclone.alg_gen import Alg
>>> alg = Alg(parse_tree, psy)
>>> print(alg.gen)
```

### **Parameters**

- parse\_tree (fparser.two.utils.Base) An object containing a parse tree of the algorithm specification which was produced by the function <code>psyclone.parse.algorithm.parse()</code>. Assumes the algorithm will be parsed by fparser2 and expects a valid program unit, program, module, subroutine or function.
- psy (psyclone.psyGen.PSy) An object containing information about the PSy layer.
- **invoke\_name** (str) The name that the algorithm layer uses to indicate an invoke call. This is an optional argument that defaults to the name "invoke".

### gen

Return modified algorithm code.

**Returns** The modified algorithm specification as an fparser2 parse tree.

Return type fparser.two.utils.Base

# 16.6 The line\_length module

Provides support for breaking long fortran lines into smaller ones to allow the code to conform to the maximum line length limits (132 for f90 free format is the default)

```
class psyclone.line length.FortLineLength(line length=132)
```

This class take a free format fortran code as a string and line wraps any lines that are larger than the specified line length

### length

returns the maximum allowed line length

### long\_lines(fortran\_in)

returns true if at least one of the lines in the input code is longer than the allowed length. Otherwise returns false

```
process (fortran in)
```

takes fortran code as a string as input and output fortran code as a string with any long lines wrapped appropriately

146 Chapter 16. API

**CHAPTER** 

## **SEVENTEEN**

## **PROFILING**

PSyclone has the ability to define regions that can be profiled with various performance measurement tools. The profiling can be enabled automatically using command line parameters like:

```
psyclone --profile kernels ...
```

Or more fine grained by applying a profiling transformation in a transformation script.

PSyclone can be used with a variety of existing profiling tools. It currently supports dl\_timer, and comes with a simple stand-alone timer library. An application needs to be able to find the module files for the profile wrapper, and needs to be linked with the included wrapper library that interfaces between the PSyclone API and the tool-specific API. It is the responsibility of the user to supply the corresponding compiler command line options when building the application that incorporates the PSyclone-generated code.

# 17.1 Profiling API

In order to be used with different profiling tools, PSyclone supports a simple profiling API. For each existing profiling tool a simple interface library needs to be implemented that maps the PSyclone profiling calls to the corresponding call for the profiling tool.

PSyclone utilises 4 profiling calls which are described in the following sub-sections.

## 17.1.1 ProfileInit()

This method needs to be called once to initialise the profiling tool. At this stage this call is not automatically inserted by PSyclone, so it is the responsibility of the user to add the call to an appropriate location in the application:

```
use profile_mod, only : ProfileInit
...
call ProfileInit()
```

The 'appropriate' location might depend on the profiling library used. For example, it might be necessary to invoke this before or after a call to  $\mathtt{MPI\_Init}$  ().

## 17.1.2 ProfileFinalise()

At the end of the program the function ProfileFinalise() must be called. It will make sure that the measurements are printed or written to file correctly, and that the profiling tool is closed correctly. Again at this stage it is necessary to manually insert the call at an appropriate location:

```
use profile_mod, only : ProfileFinalise
...
call ProfileFinalise()
```

And again the appropriate location might depend on the profiling library used (e.g. before or after a call to MPI Finalize()).

## 17.1.3 ProfileStart()/ProfileEnd()

The ProfileStart and ProfileEnd functions define the beginning and end of a region to be measured. In general it is up to the user what exactly a region is, arbitrary code can be enclosed, as long as it is guaranteed that each call of ProfileStart is matched with exactly one corresponding call to ProfileEnd. PSyclone supplies one saved (static) variable of type ProfileData to each matching Start/End pair.

This is the code sequence which is created by PSyclone:

```
use profile_mod, only : ProfileData, ProfileStart, ProfileEnd
...
type(ProfileData), save :: profiler_data
...
call ProfileStart("Module", "Region", profiler_data)
...
call ProfileEnd(profiler_data)
```

PSyclone guarantees that different ProfileStart/End pairs have different ProfileData variables.

# 17.2 Profiling Command Line Options

PSyclone offers two command line options to automatically instrument code with profiling regions. It can create profile regions around a full invoke (including all kernel calls in this invoke), and/or around each individual kernel.

The option —profile invokes will automatically add a call to ProfileStart and ProfileEnd at the beginning and end of every invoke subroutine created by PSyclone. All kernels called within this invoke subroutine will be included in the profiled region.

The option ——profile kernels will add a call to ProfileStart before any loops created by PSyclone, and a ProfileEnd call at the end of the loop. Two caveats:

- 1. In some APIs (for example dynamo when using distributed memory) additional minor code might get included in a profiled kernel section, for example setDirty() calls (expensive calls like HaloExchange are excluded).
- 2. If loop transforms are applied using a script, the profiling nodes added to the AST will very likely cause errors in the script or in the generated output. As example consider a case where an OMPLoop transform is applied to a loop. With profiling enabled instead of the expected loop there could be a profile node in the AST (with the loop as child). Since an OMP DO directive can only have loops inside, and it now has a call to ProfileStart, the generated code is incorrect and will not compile.

In order to avoid the second issue, automatic profiling using <code>--profile</code> is not allowed together with a transformation script. On the other hand, since it is possible to write scripts that are more flexible in handling a modified AST, you can use the command line option <code>--force-profile</code>. It takes the same parameters as <code>--profile</code>, and will allow you to combine a transformation script together with automatic profiling. Use this option at your own risk!

It is also the responsibility of the user to manually add the calls to ProfileInit and ProfileFinalise to the code base.

PSyclone will modify the schedule of each invoke to insert the profiling regions. Below we show an example of a schedule created when instrumenting invokes - all children of a Profile-Node will be part of the profiling region, including all loops created by PSyclone and all kernel calls:

```
GOInvokeSchedule[invoke='invoke_1',Constant loop bounds=True]

[Profile]

Loop[type='outer',field_space='cu',it_space='internal_pts']

Loop[type='inner',field_space='cu',it_space='internal_pts']

KernCall compute_unew_code(unew_fld,uold_fld,z_fld,cv_fld,h_fld,tdt,

dy) [module_inline=False]

Loop[type='outer',field_space='cv',it_space='internal_pts']

Loop[type='inner',field_space='cv',it_space='internal_pts']

KernCall compute_vnew_code(vnew_fld,vold_fld,z_fld,cu_fld,h_fld,tdt,

dy) [module_inline=False]

Loop[type='outer',field_space='ct',it_space='internal_pts']

Loop[type='inner',field_space='ct',it_space='internal_pts']

KernCall compute_pnew_code(pnew_fld,pold_fld,cu_fld,cv_fld,tdt,dx,dy)

[module_inline=False]
```

And now the same schedule when instrumenting kernels. In this case each loop nest and kernel call will be contained in a separate region:

```
GOInvokeSchedule[invoke='invoke_1', Constant loop bounds=True]
    [Profile]
        Loop[type='outer', field_space='cu', it_space='internal_pts']
            Loop[type='inner', field_space='cu', it_space='internal_pts']
                KernCall compute_unew_code(unew_fld, uold_fld, z_fld, cv_fld, h_fld, tdt,
→dy) [module_inline=False]
    [Profile]
        Loop[type='outer', field_space='cv', it_space='internal_pts']
            Loop[type='inner', field_space='cv', it_space='internal_pts']
                KernCall compute_vnew_code(vnew_fld,vold_fld,z_fld,cu_fld,h_fld,tdt,
→dy) [module_inline=False]
    [Profile]
        Loop[type='outer',field_space='ct',it_space='internal_pts']
            Loop[type='inner',field_space='ct',it_space='internal_pts']
                KernCall compute pnew_code (pnew_fld, pold_fld, cu_fld, cv_fld, tdt, dx, dy)...
→ [module inline=False]
```

Both options can be specified at the same time:

```
GOInvokeSchedule[invoke='invoke_1', Constant loop bounds=True]
    [Profile]
        [Profile]
            Loop[type='outer',field_space='cu',it_space='internal_pts']
                Loop[type='inner',field_space='cu',it_space='internal_pts']
                    KernCall compute unew code (unew fld, uold fld, z_fld, cv_fld, h_fld,
→tdt,dy) [module_inline=False]
        [Profile]
            Loop[type='outer', field_space='cv', it_space='internal_pts']
                Loop[type='inner',field_space='cv',it_space='internal_pts']
                    KernCall compute_vnew_code(vnew_fld,vold_fld,z_fld,cu_fld,h_fld,
→tdt,dy) [module_inline=False]
        [Profile]
            Loop[type='outer', field_space='ct', it_space='internal_pts']
                Loop[type='inner',field_space='ct',it_space='internal_pts']
                    KernCall compute_pnew_code (pnew_fld, pold_fld, cu_fld, cv_fld, tdt, dx,
→dy) [module_inline=False]
```

# 17.3 Profiling in Scripts - ProfileRegionTransform

The greatest flexibility is achieved by using the profiler transformation explicitly in a transformation script. The script takes either a single AST Node or a list of AST Nodes as argument, and will insert a Profile Node into the AST, with the specified nodes as children. At code creation time the listed children will all be enclosed in one profile region. As an example:

```
from psyclone.transformations import ProfileRegionTrans

t=TransInfo()
p_trans= ProfileRegionTrans()
schedule=psy.invokes.get('invoke_0').schedule
schedule.view()

# Enclose all children within a single profile region
newschedule, _ = p_trans.apply(schedule.children[1:3])
newschedule.view()
```

**Warning:** It is the responsibility of the user to make sure that a profile region is only created inside a multi-threaded region if the profiling library used is thread-safe!

# 17.4 Interface to Third Party Profiling Tools

PSyclone comes with wrapper libraries to support usage of Dr Hook, dl\_timer and a simple non-thread-safe timing library. Support for further profiling libraries will be added in the future. To compile the wrapper libraries, change into the directory lib/profiling of PSyclone and type make to compile all wrappers. If only some of the wrapper are required, you can either use make wrapper-name (e.g. make drhook), or change into the corresponding directory and use make. The corresponding README files contain additional parameters that can be set in order to find third party profiling tools.

Any user can create similar wrapper libraries for other profiling tools by providing a corresponding Fortran module. The four profiling calls described in the section about the *ProfilingAPI* must be implemented, and an opaque, user-defined type ProfileData needs to be provided in the module.

Note that the ProfileEnd call does not have the module or region name as an argument. If this is required by the profiling library, this data must be stored in the ProfileData object so that it is available in the ProfileEnd call.

The examples in the lib/profiling directory show various ways in which the opaque data type can be used to interface with existing profiling tools - for example by storing an index used by the profiling tool in ProfileData, or by storing pointers to the profiling data to be able to print all results in a ProfileFinalise() subroutine.

**CHAPTER** 

## **EIGHTEEN**

# **PSY KERNEL EXTRACTOR (PSYKE)**

## 18.1 Introduction

PSyclone has the ability to define regions of a PSyclone-conformant code to be extracted and run as a stand-alone application. This ability, called PSyKE (PSy Kernel Extractor), can be useful for benchmarking parts of a model, such as LFRic, without the need for using its infrastructure.

## 18.1.1 Mechanism

The code marked for extraction can be (subject to *Restrictions*):

- One or more Nodes in an Invoke (e.g. Loops containing Kernel or Built-In calls, a Directive enclosing one or more Loops) or
- The entire Invoke (extraction applied to all Nodes).

The basic mechanism of code extraction is through applying the **ExtractRegionTrans** transformation to selected Nodes. This transformation is further sub-classed into API-specific implementations, **DynamoExtractRegionTrans** and **GOceanExtractRegionTrans**. Both sub-classed transformations insert an instance of the **ExtractNode** object into the Schedule of a specific Invoke. All Nodes marked for extraction become children of the **ExtractNode**.

For now, the **ExtractNode** class simply adds comments at the beginning and the end of the extract region, that is at the position of the extract Node and after all its children. For example, marking a single Loop containing a Kernel call in Dynamo0.3 API generates:

```
! ExtractStart
! CALL write_extract_arguments(argument_list)
!
DO cell=1,f3_proxy%vspace%get_ncell()
!
CALL testkern_code_w2_only(nlayers, f3_proxy%data, f2_proxy%data, ...)
END DO
!
! ExtractEnd
```

The ! CALL write\_extract\_arguments (argument\_list) comment will be replaced by appropriate calls to write out arguments of extracted Node(s) or Kernel(s) in Issue #234. The **ExtractNode** base class can be sub-classed by API-specific code. This will be required for constructing the list of quantities required by Kernel (and Built-In) calls in the extracted Nodes.

### 18.1.2 Restrictions

Code extraction can be applied to unoptimised or optimised code. There are restrictions that check for correctness of optimising transformations when extraction is applied, as well as restrictions that eliminate dependence on the specific model infrastructure.

#### General

This group of restrictions is enforced irrespective of whether optimisations are used or not.

- Extraction can be applied to a single Node or a list of Nodes in a Schedule. For the latter, Nodes in the list must be consecutive children of the same parent Schedule.
- Extraction cannot be applied to an **ExtractNode** or a Node list that already contains one (otherwise we would have an extract region within another extract region).
- A Kernel or a Built-In call cannot be extracted without its parent Loop.

### **Distributed memory**

As noted in the *Distributed Memory* section, support for distributed memory in PSyclone is currently limited to the Dynamo0.3 API. Since the implementation generates calls to LFRic infrastructure (e.g. runtime checks for status of field halos), code extraction is not allowed when distributed memory is enabled.

### **Shared memory and API-specific**

The **ExtractRegionTrans** transformation cannot be applied to:

- A Loop without its parent Directive,
- An orphaned Directive (e.g. OMPDoDirective, ACCLoopDirective) without its parent Directive (e.g. ACC or OMP Parallel Directive),
- A Loop over cells in a colour without its parent Loop over colours in the Dynamo0.3 API,
- An inner Loop without its parent outer Loop in the GOcean 1.0 API.

### 18.2 Use

The code extraction is currently enabled by utilising a transformation script (see *Script* section for more details).

For example, the transformation script which extracts the first Kernel call in Dynamo0.3 API test example 15.1. 2 builtin and normal kernel invoke.f90 would be written as:

```
from psyclone.transformations import DynamoExtractRegionTrans

# Get instance of the ExtractRegionTrans transformation
etrans = DynamoExtractRegionTrans()

# Get Invoke and its Schedule
invoke = psy.invokes.get("invoke_0")
schedule = invoke.schedule

# Apply extract transformation to the selected Node
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
schedule, _ = etrans.apply(schedule.children[2])
schedule.view()
```

and called as:

```
> psyclone -nodm -s ./extract_single_node.py \
    <path-to-example>/15.1.2_builtin_and_normal_kernel_invoke.f90
```

PSyclone modifies the Schedule of the selected invoke\_0:

```
Schedule[invoke='invoke_0' dm=False]

Loop[type='dofs', field_space='any_space_1', it_space='dofs', upper_bound='ndofs']

Call setval_c(f5,0.0)

Loop[type='dofs', field_space='any_space_1', it_space='dofs', upper_bound='ndofs']

Call setval_c(f2,0.0)

Loop[type='',field_space='w2',it_space='cells', upper_bound='ncells']

KernCall testkern_code_w2_only(f3,f2) [module_inline=False]

Loop[type='',field_space='wtheta',it_space='cells', upper_bound='ncells']

KernCall testkern_wtheta_code(f4,f5) [module_inline=False]

Loop[type='',field_space='w1',it_space='cells', upper_bound='ncells']

KernCall testkern_code(scalar,f1,f2,f3,f4) [module_inline=False]
```

to insert the extract region. As shown below, all children of an **ExtractNode** will be part of the region:

```
Schedule[invoke='invoke_0' dm=False]

Loop[type='dofs', field_space='any_space_1', it_space='dofs', upper_bound='ndofs']

Call setval_c(f5,0.0)

Loop[type='dofs', field_space='any_space_1', it_space='dofs', upper_bound='ndofs']

Call setval_c(f2,0.0)

Extract

Loop[type='',field_space='w2',it_space='cells', upper_bound='ncells']

KernCall testkern_code_w2_only(f3,f2) [module_inline=False]

Loop[type='',field_space='wtheta',it_space='cells', upper_bound='ncells']

KernCall testkern_wtheta_code(f4,f5) [module_inline=False]

Loop[type='',field_space='w1',it_space='cells', upper_bound='ncells']

KernCall testkern_code(scalar,f1,f2,f3,f4) [module_inline=False]
```

To extract multiple Nodes, **ExtractRegionTrans** can be applied to the list of Nodes (subject to *General* restrictions above):

```
# Apply extract transformation to the selected Nodes
schedule, _ = etrans.apply(schedule.children[1:3])
```

This modifies the above Schedule as:

```
Extract

Loop[type='dofs',field_space='any_space_1',it_space='dofs', upper_bound='ndofs

Call setval_c(f2,0.0)

Loop[type='',field_space='w2',it_space='cells', upper_bound='ncells']

KernCall testkern_code_w2_only(f3,f2) [module_inline=False]

...
```

As said above, extraction can be performed on optimised code. For example, the following example transformation script first adds ! SOMP PARALLEL DO directive and then extracts the optimised code in Dynamo0.3 API test example 15.1.2\_builtin\_and\_normal\_kernel\_invoke.f90:

18.2. Use 153

```
from psyclone.transformations import DynamoOMPParallelLoopTrans, \
    DynamoExtractRegionTrans

# Get instances of the transformations
etrans = DynamoExtractRegionTrans()
otrans = DynamoOMPParallelLoopTrans()

# Get Invoke and its Schedule
invoke = psy.invokes.get("invoke_0")
schedule = invoke.schedule

# Add OMP PARALLEL DO directives
schedule, _ = otrans.apply(schedule.children[1])
schedule, _ = otrans.apply(schedule.children[2])
# Apply extract transformation to the selected Nodes
schedule, _ = etrans.apply(schedule.children[1:3])
schedule.view()
```

### The generated code is now:

Examples in examples/dynamo/eg12 directory demonstrate how to apply code extraction by utilising PSyclone transformation scripts (see *Examples* section for more information).

**CHAPTER** 

## **NINETEEN**

## SYSTEM-SPECIFIC SET-UP FOR USERS

This chapter describes the setup for a user of PSyclone. It includes all steps necessary to be able to use PSyclone. And while you could obviously do some development, none of the required tools for testing or documentation creation will be installed.

The System-specific Developer Set-up in the Developers' Guide describes the additional installation of all required tools to run tests and create documentation.

Detailed instructions are provided for Ubuntu 16.04.2 and OpenSUSE 42.2 - if you are working with a different Linux distribution some adjustments will be necessary. You will need a terminal window open in which to enter the commands.

# 19.1 Installing dependencies

Most required dependencies are installed from the Python Package Index (https://packaging.python.org/installing/) using the program pip ("PIP Installs Packages"). Besides pip it is also recommended to install the graphviz package to be able to visualise dependency graphs. This is optional and the associated routine will silently return if the graphviz bindings are not installed.

## 19.1.1 Installing dependencies on Ubuntu

On Ubuntu pip and graphviz are installed using apt-get. Remember that graphviz is optional and that you'll need to install the graphviz package in addition to the Python bindings.

```
> sudo apt-get install python-pip graphviz
```

## 19.1.2 Installing dependencies on OpenSUSE

The vanilla OpenSUSE installation includes pip for Python 3. Note that the graphviz package is installed by default.

```
> sudo zypper install python-pip
```

# 19.2 Installing PSyclone

Change your working directory to where you would like to place the code and download the latest stable release of PSyclone.

```
> cd <PSYCLONEHOME>
> wget https://github.com/stfc/PSyclone/archive/1.7.0.tar.gz
> gunzip 1.7.0.tar.gz
> tar xf 1.7.0.tar
> rm 1.7.0.tar
> cd PSyclone-1.7.0
> export PYTHONPATH=`pwd`/src:${PYTHONPATH}
> export PATH=`pwd`/bin:${PATH}
```

This sets up your python path and path appropriately. You may want to set these paths permanently (e.g. by editing your \${HOME}/.bashrc file if you run the BASH shell). You can also use the latest version using git, as described in Installing PSyclone From GitHub.

## 19.3 Common installation

To avoid warnings during the dependency installation, it is recommended to update pip to the latest version:

```
> sudo pip install --upgrade pip
```

Next you need to install the fparser and pyparsing packages:

```
> sudo pip install fparser pyparsing
```

**Tip:** With pip it is possible to install packages either system-wide (which requires root privileges) as above, or for a single user only (in ~/.local). While the latter is only useful for one particular user, it means that PSyclone can be installed using pip without needing root privileges. In order to install a package for a user, add the –user command line option to all pip commands. This flag requests that the packages be installed locally for the current user rather than requiring root access:

```
> pip install --user fparser pyparsing
```

You may remove the use of sudo and add the --user option to all pip commands described in this document.

Uninstalling is simply a matter of doing:

```
> sudo pip uninstall fparser pyparsing
```

PSyclone supports the ability to output a schedule dependency graph using the graphviz package. This is optional and the associated routine will silently return if the graphviz bindings are not installed. If you have the graphviz package installed (see especially section *Installing dependencies on Ubuntu* if you are on Ubuntu), you also need to install the python bindings to the graphviz package:

```
> sudo pip install graphviz
```

If you just want to use PSyclone then you've installed all you need and you are ready to go to the getting-going *Run* section.

**CHAPTER** 

## **TWENTY**

## CONFIGURATION

PSyclone reads various run-time configuration options from the psyclone.cfg file. As described in *Configuration*, the default psyclone.cfg configuration file is installed in <python-base-prefix>/share/psyclone/during the installation process. The original version of this file is in the PSyclone/config directory of the PSyclone distribution.

At execution-time, the user can specify a custom configuration file to be used. This can either be done with the --config command line option, or by specifying the (full path to the) configuration file to use via the PSYCLONE\_CONFIG environment variable. If the specified configuration file is not found then PSyclone will fall back to searching in a list of default locations.

The ordering of these locations depends upon whether PSyclone is being run within a Python virtual environment (such as venv). If no virtual environment is detected then the locations searched, in order, are:

- 1. \${PWD}/.psyclone/
- 2. \${HOME}/.local/share/psyclone/
- 3. <python-base-dir>/share/psyclone/

where <python-base-dir> is the path stored in Python's sys.prefix.

If a virtual environment is detected then it is assumed that the share directory will be a part of that environment. In order to maintain isolation of distinct virtual environments this directory is then checked *before* the user's home directory. i.e. the list of locations searched is now:

- 1. \${PWD}/.psyclone/
- 2. <python-base-dir>/share/psyclone/
- 3. \${HOME}/.local/share/psyclone/

Note that for developers a slightly different configuration handling is implemented, see Module: configuration for details.

# 20.1 Options

The configuration file is read by the Python ConfigParser class (https://docs.python.org/3/library/configparser.html) and must be formatted accordingly. It currently consists of a DEFAULT section e.g.:

```
[DEFAULT]

API = dynamo0.3

DEFAULTSTUBAPI = dynamo0.3

DISTRIBUTED_MEMORY = true

REPRODUCIBLE_REDUCTIONS = false

REPROD_PAD_SIZE = 8
```

and an optional API specific section, for example for dynamo0.3 section:

### or for gocean1.0:

The meaning of the various entries is described in the following sub-sections.

Note that ConfigParser supports various forms of boolean entry including "true/false", "yes/no" and "1/0". See https://docs.python.org/3/library/configparser.html#supported-datatypes for more details.

## 20.1.1 DEFAULT Section

This section contains entries that are, in principle, applicable to all APIs supported by PSyclone.

Entry	Description	
API	The API that PSyclone assumes an Algorithm/Kernl conforms to if no API	
	is specified. Must be one of the APIs supported by PSyclone (dynamo0.1,	
	dynamo0.3, gocean0.1, gocean1.0 and nemo). If there is no API specified	
	and there is only one API-specific section in the config file loaded, this AF	
	will be used. This value can be overwritten by the command line option	
	'-api'. If there is no API entry in the config file, and '-api' is not specified	
	on the command line, dynamo0.3 is used as default.	
DEFAULTSTUBAPI	The API that the kernel-stub generator assumes by default. Must be one of	
	the stub-APIs supported by PSyclone (dynamo0.3 only at this stage).	
DISTRIBUTED_MEMORY	Whether or not to generate code for distributed-memory parallelism by	
	default. Note that this is currently only supported for the dynamo0.3 API.	
REPRODUCIBLE_REDUCTIONS	Whether or not to generate code for reproducible OpenMP reductions (see	
	Reductions) by default.	
REPROD_PAD_SIZE	If generating code for reproducible OpenMP reductions, this setting controls the amount of padding used between elements of the array in	
	which each thread accumulates its local reduction. (This prevents false	
	sharing of cache lines by different threads.)	

## 20.1.2 Common Sections

The following entries must be defined for each API in order for PSyclone to work as expected:

Entry	Description	
access_mapping	This field defines the strings that are used by a particular API to indicate write, read,	
	access. Its value is a comma separated list of access-string:access pairs, e.g.:	
	<pre>gh_read:read, gh_write:write, gh_rw:readwrite, gh_inc:inc,</pre>	
	gh_sum:sum	
	At this stage these 5 types are defined for read, write, read+write, increment and summation	
	access by PSyclone. Sum is a form of reduction. The gocean APIs do not support increment	
	or sum, so they only define three mappings for read, write, and readwrite.	

## 20.1.3 dynamo0.3 Section

This section contains configuration options that are only applicable when using the Dynamo 0.3 API.

Entry	Description
COMPUTE_ANNEXED_DOFS	Whether or not to perform redundant computation over annexed dofs in order
	to reduce the number of halo exchanges. See Dof iterators in the Developers'
	guide.

## 20.1.4 gocean1.0 Section

This section contains configuration options that are only applicable when using the Gocean 1.0 API.

Entry	Description
iteration-spaces	This contains definitions of additional iteration spaces used by PSyclone. A detailed
	description can be found in the <i>Configuration</i> section of the GOcean 1.0 chapter.

## 20.1.5 NEMO Section

This section contains configuration options that are only applicable when using the NEMO API.

Entry	Description	
mapping-TYPE	This declares a mapping for a certain loop level, specified as TYPE. Each value must have	
	three key:value pairs. A value can be empty if it is not required or not known, but the key must	
	still be specified. The required keys are:	
	var: the variable name that indicates the loop level,	
	start: the first loop iteration, and	
	stop: the last loop iteration.	
	Each loop detected by the NEMO API will be given one of the TYPE values specified in the	
	configuration file. See the example below for more details.	
index-order	Specifies the order in which loops are created when converting an implicit loop to an explicit	
	loop. All values in this comma-separated list must have a corresponding mapping-TYPE	
	value defined.	

Below we show an example of the NEMO section of a PSyclone configuration file. Note how the values in index-order have corresponding mapping entries, e.g. mapping-lon, mapping-lat etc.:

20.1. Options 159

```
mapping-lon = var: ji, start: 1, stop: jpi
mapping-lat = var: jj, start: 1, stop: jpj
mapping-levels = var: jk, start: 1, stop: jpk
mapping-tracers = var: jt, start: 1, stop:
mapping-unknown = var: , start: 1, stop:
index-order = lon, lat, levels, tracers
```

If a NEMO loop then uses Do jj=..., PSyclone will give this loop the type 'lat', because the loop uses the variable name specified in the configuration file for a loop of type 'lat'. The loop type can be accessed using loop. loop\_type, i.e. in this example it will be loop\_loop\_type == 'lat'.

The entry mapping-unknown has an empty value for the key 'var'. This means that the type 'unknown' will be used for any loop that can not be mapped using any of the other variable names in the configuration file.

# **BIBLIOGRAPHY**

[nem13] NEMO Coding Conventions. 2013. URL: https://forge.ipsl.jussieu.fr/nemo/attachment/wiki/Literature/NEMO\_coding.conv\_v3.pdf.

162 Bibliography

# **PYTHON MODULE INDEX**

## р

psyclone.alg\_gen, 144 psyclone.generator, 123 psyclone.line\_length, 145 psyclone.parse.algorithm, 124 psyclone.psyGen, 144 psyclone.transformations, 124

164 Python Module Index

# **INDEX**

Α	apply()(psyclone.transformations.GOceanLoopFuseTrans
ACCDataTrans (class in psyclone.transformations),	method), 136
124	apply() (psyclone.transformations.GOceanOMPLoopTrans
ACCEnterDataTrans (class in psy-	method), 136 apply () (psyclone.transformations.GOceanOMPParallelLoopTrans
clone.transformations), 125	method), 136
ACCKernelsTrans (class in psy-	apply() (psyclone.transformations.GOConstLoopBoundsTrans
clone.transformations), 126 ACCLoopTrans (class in psyclone.transformations),	method), 134
126	apply()(psyclone.transformations.GOLoopSwapTrans
ACCParallelTrans (class in psy-	method), 135
clone.transformations), 128	apply()(psyclone.transformations.KernelModuleInlineTrans
ACCRoutineTrans (class in psy-	method), 137
clone.transformations), 128	apply() (psyclone.transformations.LoopFuseTrans
Alg (class in psyclone.alg_gen), 144	method), 138
apply() (psyclone.transformations.ACCDataTrans	apply() (psyclone.transformations.MoveTrans
method), 125	method), 138 apply () (psyclone.transformations.NemoExplicitLoopTrans
apply()(psyclone.transformations.ACCEnterDataTrans	method), 139
<pre>method), 125 apply () (psyclone.transformations.ACCKernelsTrans</pre>	apply() (psyclone.transformations.OCLTrans
method), 126	method), 139
apply() (psyclone.transformations.ACCLoopTrans	apply() (psyclone.transformations.OMPLoopTrans
method), 127	method), 140
apply() (psyclone.transformations.ACCRoutineTrans	${\tt apply}$ () (psyclone.transformations.OMPParallelLoopTrans
method), 128	method), 141
apply() (psyclone.transformations.ColourTrans	apply() (psyclone.transformations.ParallelLoopTrans
method), 129	method), 142
apply() (psyclone.transformations.Dynamo0p3AsyncHa	lown hange transformations.ParallelRegionTrans method), 143
method), 130	
apply() (psyclone.transformations.Dynamo0p3ColourTr	method), 143
method), 131	
apply () (psyclone.transformations.Dynamo0p3KernelComethod), 131	on Strains
apply () (psyclone.transformations.Dynamo0p3OMPLoo	p <b>Thens</b> k_intergrid() (in module psy-
method), 132	clone.transformations), 144
apply() (psyclone.transformations.Dynamo0p3Redundate	· ·
method), 132	
$\verb"apply" () \textit{ (psyclone.transformations.} DynamoLoopFuseTransformations. DynamoLoopFuseTransformations) and the state of the property of th$	
method), 133	DynamoOp3AsyncHaloExchangeTrans (class in
$\verb"apply" () \textit{ (psyclone.transformations.DynamoOMPP} arallet  \\$	lLoopTranspsyclone.transformations), 129
method), 133	DynamoOp3ColourTrans (class in psy-
apply () (psyclone.transformations.ExtractRegionTrans method), 133	clone.transformations), 130

clone.transformations), 131	list (psyclone.psyGen.TransInfo attribute), 33 long_lines() (psyclone.line_length.FortLineLength
DynamoOp3OMPLoopTrans (class in psy- clone.transformations), 131	method), 145 LoopFuseTrans (class in psyclone.transformations),
DynamoOp3RedundantComputationTrans (class in psyclone.transformations), 132	137
DynamoExtractRegionTrans (class in psy-	M
clone.transformations), 132	MoveTrans (class in psyclone.transformations), 138
DynamoLoopFuseTrans (class in psy-	N
<pre>clone.transformations), 133 DynamoOMPParallelLoopTrans (class in psy-</pre>	
clone.transformations), 133	name (psyclone.transformations.ACCDataTrans at- tribute), 125
	name (psyclone.transformations.ACCEnterDataTrans at-
E	tribute), 126
ExtractRegionTrans (class in psyclone.transformations), 133	name (psyclone.transformations.ACCKernelsTrans at- tribute), 126
F	name (psyclone.transformations.ACCLoopTrans at- tribute), 127
FortLineLength (class in psyclone.line_length), 145	name (psyclone.transformations.ACCParallelTrans attribute), 128
G	name (psyclone.transformations.ACCRoutineTrans at-
gen (psyclone.alg_gen.Alg attribute), 145	tribute), 129
gen (psyclone.psyGen.PSy attribute), 144	name (psyclone.transformations.ColourTrans attribute), 129
<pre>generate() (in module psyclone.generator), 123 get_trans_name() (psyclone.psyGen.TransInfo</pre>	name (psyclone.transformations.Dynamo0p3AsyncHaloExchangeTrans
method), 33	attribute), 130
<pre>get_trans_num()</pre>	name (psyclone.transformations.Dynamo0p3ColourTrans attribute), 131
gocean1p0 (psyclone.transformations.ACCParallelTrans attribute), 128	attribute), 131
GOceanExtractRegionTrans (class in psyclone.transformations), 135	name (psyclone.transformations.Dynamo0p3OMPLoopTrans attribute), 132
GOceanLoopFuseTrans (class in psyclone.transformations), 136	name (psyclone.transformations.Dynamo0p3RedundantComputationTrans attribute), 132
GOceanOMPLoopTrans (class in psy-	$\verb name  (psyclone.transformations.DynamoExtractRegionTrans $
clone.transformations), 136	attribute), 133
GOceanOMPParallelLoopTrans (class in psyclone.transformations), 136	name (psyclone.transformations.DynamoLoopFuseTrans attribute), 133
GOConstLoopBoundsTrans (class in psyclone.transformations), 134	name (psyclone.transformations.DynamoOMPParallelLoopTrans attribute), 133
GOLoopSwapTrans (class in psyclone.transformations), 135	name (psyclone.transformations.ExtractRegionTrans attribute), 134
t	name (psyclone.transformations.GOceanExtractRegionTrans attribute), 136
inline() (psyclone.psyGen.PSy method), 144	name (psyclone.transformations.GOceanLoopFuseTrans
K	attribute), 136 name (psyclone.transformations.GOceanOMPLoopTrans
KernelModuleInlineTrans (class in psy-	attribute), 136
clone.transformations), 136	name (psyclone.transformations.GOceanOMPParallelLoopTrans attribute), 136
L	name (psyclone.transformations.GOConstLoopBoundsTrans attribute), 135
<pre>length (psyclone.line_length.FortLineLength at- tribute), 145</pre>	name (psyclone.transformations.GOLoopSwapTrans attribute), 135

166 Index

name	(psyclone. transformations. Kernel Module In line Transformations)	
	attribute), 137	psyclone.alg_gen(module), 144
name		psyclone.generator(module), 123
	tribute), 138	psyclone.line_length(module), 145
name	4 2	
	138	psyclone.psyGen (module), 144
name	(psyclone.transformations. Nemo Explicit Loop Trans	
	attribute), 139	psyGen (psyclone.transformations.ACCDataTrans at-
name	$(psyclone.transformations. OCLT rans \ \ attribute),$	tribute), 125
	139	psyGen (psyclone.transformations.ACCKernelsTrans
name	(psyclone.transformations.OMPLoopTrans at-	attribute), 126
	tribute), 141	psyGen (psyclone.transformations.ACCParallelTrans
name	(psyclone.transformations.OMP Parallel Loop Trans	attribute), 128
	attribute), 141	psyGen (psyclone.transformations.ExtractRegionTrans
name	(psyclone.transformations.OMPParallelTrans at-	attribute), 134
	tribute), 142	psyGen (psyclone.transformations.OMPParallelTrans
name	(psyclone.transformations.ParallelLoopTrans at-	attribute), 142
	tribute), 143	psyGen (psyclone.transformations.ProfileRegionTrans
name	(psyclone.transformations.ParallelRegionTrans at-	attribute), 143
	tribute), 143	R
name	(psyclone.transformations.ProfileRegionTrans at-	
	tribute), 143	RegionTrans (class in psyclone.transformations), 143
nemo	4 5	Т
	tribute), 126	•
nemo	(psyclone.transformations.ACCParallelTrans at-	TransformationError, 144
Nomel	tribute), 128 ExplicitLoopTrans (class in psy-	TransInfo (class in psyclone.psyGen), 33
мещо	ExplicitLoopTrans (class in psyclone.transformations), 138	V
num	trans (psyclone.psyGen.TransInfo attribute), 33	V
muni_	crans (psycione.psycen.transingo auriome), 55	validate()(psyclone.transformations.ACCRoutineTrans
0		method), 129
	120	$\verb validate()  (psyclone.transformations.Kernel Module In line Transformations.Kernel Module In line Transformations. A substitution of the property of the p$
	rans (class in psyclone.transformations), 139	method), 137
omp_:	schedule (psy-	$\verb validate()  (psyclone.transformations.NemoExplicitLoopTrans \\$
	clone.transformations.OMPLoopTrans at- tribute), 141	method), 139
OMDI	oopTrans (class in psyclone.transformations),	
OMP L	140	
OMDD	arallelLoopTrans (class in psy-	
OMER	clone.transformations), 141	
OMDD	arallelTrans (class in psy-	
OPILL	clone.transformations), 141	
	cione.transjormations), 171	
Р		
-	llelLoopTrans (class in psy-	
rala.	llelLoopTrans (class in psyclone.transformations), 142	
Dara		
Pala.		
narc	clone.transformations), 143  e () (in module psyclone.parse.algorithm), 124	
	ess() (in module psyctone.parse.aigorium), 124 ess() (psyclone.line_length.FortLineLength	
PT OC	method), 145	
nrof	iler (psyclone.transformations.ProfileRegionTran	
r-0	attribute), 143	,
Prof	ileRegionTrans (class in psy-	
	clone.transformations), 143	

Index 167